All Rights Reserved

The information in this guide is confidential and a proprietary trade secret of J.D. Edwards World Source Company. It may not be copied, distributed, or disclosed without prior written permission. This guide is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of J.D. Edwards & Company and/or its subsidiaries. The software described in this guide is furnished under a license agreement and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the agreement. J.D. Edwards World Source Company uses automatic software disabling routines to monitor the license agreement. For more details about these routines, please refer to the technical product documentation.
Where Do I Look?

Online Help
- Program
- Form
- Field

CD-ROM Guides

Guides

Technical Foundation
System Administration and Environment Fundamentals
- Understanding Your Environment
- Creating and Maintaining Environments
- Setting Up Security
- Upgrading Your System

Common Foundation
Prerequisite
J.D. Edwards Software Fundamentals
- Using Menus
- Getting Help
- Customizing Data
- Reporting
Important Note for Students in Training Classes

This guide is a source book for online helps, training classes, and user reference. Training classes may not cover all the topics contained here.
Welcome

About this Guide

This guide provides overviews, illustrations, procedures, and examples for the current release of J.D. Edwards software. Forms (screens and windows) shown are only examples. If your company operates at a different software level, you might find discrepancies between what is shown in this guide and what you see on your screen.

This guide includes examples to help you understand how to use the system. You can access all of the information about a task using either the guide or the online help.

Before using this guide, you should have a fundamental understanding of the system, user defined codes, and category codes. You should also know how to:

- Use the menus
- Enter information in fields
- Add, change, and delete information
- Create and run report versions
- Access online documentation

Audience

This guide is intended primarily for the following audiences:

- Users
- Classroom instructors
- Client Services personnel
- Consultants and implementation team members

Organization

This guide is divided into sections for each major function. Sections contain chapters for each task or group of related tasks. Each chapter contains the information you need to accomplish the task, run the program, or print the
report. Chapters normally include an overview, form or report samples, and procedures.

When it is appropriate, chapters also might explain automatic accounting instructions, processing options, and warnings or error situations. Some chapters include self-tests for your use outside the classroom.

This guide has a detailed table of contents and an index to help you locate information quickly.

**Conventions Used in this Guide**

The following terms have specific meanings when used in this guide:

- *Form* refers to a screen or a window.
- *Table* generally means “file.”

We assume an “implied completion” at the end of a series of steps. That is, to complete the procedure described in the series of steps, either press Enter or click OK, except where noted.
# Table of Contents

## Product Data Management Overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Integration</td>
<td>1–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Features</td>
<td>1–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Concepts</td>
<td>1–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Requirements Planning and Execution (ERPx) Review</td>
<td>1–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu Overview</td>
<td>1–7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast Path Commands</td>
<td>1–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item Entry Overview</td>
<td>1–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About Item Entry</td>
<td>1–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter Item Master Information</td>
<td>1–13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Item Master Information</td>
<td>1–13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Basic Item Information</td>
<td>1–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Item Text</td>
<td>1–23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigning Item Responsibility</td>
<td>1–26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Item Classification Codes</td>
<td>1–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Item Unit of Measure Information</td>
<td>1–33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Item Manufacturing Information</td>
<td>1–38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Item Grade and Potency Information</td>
<td>1–43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for Item Master Revisions</td>
<td>1–47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter Branch/Plant Information</td>
<td>1–49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Branch/Plant Information</td>
<td>1–49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigning an Item to a Branch/Plant</td>
<td>1–52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with Item Locations</td>
<td>1–52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering Item Branch/Plant Manufacturing Information</td>
<td>1–57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing Options for Item Branch Revisions</td>
<td>1–61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Process Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>About Process Manufacturing</td>
<td>2–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About Work Centers</td>
<td>2–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Features</td>
<td>2–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Center System Integration</td>
<td>2–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Center Arrangement</td>
<td>2–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About Processes</td>
<td>2–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-Products</td>
<td>2–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By-Products</td>
<td>2–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingredients</td>
<td>2–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediates</td>
<td>2–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process Routings</td>
<td>2–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes</td>
<td>2–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternate Operations</td>
<td>2–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch Processes</td>
<td>2–7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Percent Processes .............................................. 2–7
About Leadtimes .................................................. 2–8
Tables ............................................................ 2–8
  Training Class Case Study .................................. 2–9
  Concepts ....................................................... 2–9
Set Up Process Manufacturing .................................. 2–11
  Setting Up Process Manufacturing ....................... 2–11
  Setting Up Manufacturing Constants .................... 2–11
  Setting Up Bill of Material Types ....................... 2–16
  Setting Up Time Basis Codes ............................. 2–17
  Setting Up Standard Procedure Descriptions ............ 2–18
  Setting Up a Shop Floor Calendar ....................... 2–20
  Setting Up a Make/Buy Table ............................. 2–22
  Setting Up Routing Types ................................ 2–23
Work With Work Centers ...................................... 2–25
  Working With Work Centers ............................... 2–25
  Entering Work Centers .................................... 2–25
  Entering Costing and Accounting Information .......... 2–31
  Reviewing Operations by Work Center ................... 2–34
  Test Yourself: Working With Work Centers .............. 2–36
Work With Processes .......................................... 2–37
  Working With Processes .................................. 2–37
  Enter Processes ........................................... 2–38
  Working With Operations ................................ 2–40
  Working With Ingredients ................................. 2–44
  Entering Production Information ....................... 2–48
  Entering Co-/By-Products ................................ 2–49
  Entering Intermediates .................................... 2–50
    Processing Options for Work With Routing Operations 2–52
  Working With Text ......................................... 2–52
  Updating Component Scrap ................................ 2–53
  Changing Multiple Processes ............................. 2–54
    Processing Options for Where Used Update ............ 2–56
    Where Used Update Report ............................. 2–57
  Verifying Processes ....................................... 2–57
    Integrity Analysis Report With Errors ................. 2–58
    Integrity Analysis Report Without Errors .......... 2–58
Review Processes .............................................. 2–59
  Reviewing Processes ..................................... 2–59
Locating Processes ............................................ 2–60
  Processing Options for Ingredients Inquiry .......... 2–62
  Processing Options for Ingredients Where Used ....... 2–63
  Processing Options for Co By Product Where Produced 2–66
Printing Process Information ................................ 2–68
  Single Level Ingredient Report ......................... 2–68
  Processing Options for Single Level Ingredient Report 2–69
  Multi-Level Ingredient Report ........................... 2–69
  Processing Options for Multi-Level Ingredient Report 2–70
  Ingredient Where Used Report ........................... 2–71
  Processing Options for Ingredient Where Used ....... 2–72
  Process Report ............................................ 2–72
Table of Contents

Instructions Report ................................................. 2–73
Work With Leadtimes ........................................... 2–75
Working With Leadtimes ....................................... 2–75
Reviewing Leadtimes ........................................... 2–75
Processing Options for Leadtime Bill of Material Inquiry .... 2–77
Generating Leadtimes ........................................... 2–77
Processing Options for Leadtime Calculation ................. 2–77
Test Yourself: Generating Leadtimes .......................... 2–78

Engineering Change Management

About Engineering Change Management .................. 3–1
What Is an ECO (Engineering Change Order)? .......... 3–2
Features ......................................................... 3–2
System Integration ............................................. 3–3
Who Is Involved in the ECO Process? ...................... 3–3
What Kinds of Changes Can I Define? ...................... 3–6
Tables .......................................................... 3–8
Set Up Engineering Change Orders ....................... 3–9
Setting Up Engineering Change Orders ................. 3–9
Setting Up Engineering Change Order Codes .......... 3–9
Setting Up Next Numbers for Engineering Change Orders 3–16
Setting Up Approval Routings ............................. 3–20
Work With Engineering Change Orders .................. 3–23
Working With Engineering Change Orders .............. 3–23
Locating Existing ECOS ...................................... 3–23
Processing Options for ECO Workbench ................. 3–27
Entering ECOs ................................................. 3–27
Defining Routings for ECOs ................................. 3–32
Defining Changes ............................................. 3–35
Processing Options for ECO Parts List .................. 3–46
Reviewing Pending Orders ................................. 3–48
Processing Options for ECO Entry ....................... 3–51
Notifying ECO Reviewers .................................. 3–52
Processing Options for ECO Order Approval Notification 3–52
Review Engineering Change Orders ..................... 3–53
Reviewing Engineering Change Orders ................. 3–53
Locating ECO Information .................................. 3–54
Processing Options for ECO Revision Inquiry .......... 3–55
Processing Options for Order Approval Audit/Review .... 3–56
Processing Options for ECO Open Task Review ........ 3–58
Reviewing Future Bills of Material ....................... 3–58
Processing Options for Future Bill Inquiry ............. 3–60
Printing ECO Information .................................. 3–60
ECO Details Report ......................................... 3–61
Processing Options for ECO Details Report ............ 3–61
Open ECO Report ............................................ 3–62
Approve Engineering Change Orders ................... 3–63
Approving Engineering Change Orders ................. 3–63
Reviewing ECOs for Approval ............................. 3–63
Appendices

Appendix A – Data Model ................................................. A–1
Appendix B – Test Yourself Answers ................................. B–1
Appendix C – Leadtime Calculations ................................. C–1

Glossary

Index

Exercises
Overview
Product Data Management Overview

The Product Data Management (PDM) system enables you to organize and maintain information about each item you manufacture. Use the Product Data Management system to define the relationships between inventory items (and other purchased or non-stock items) and how they can be combined to manufacture a saleable product.

This system provides basic data for other manufacturing systems. You should verify that your product data is accurate to ensure the efficiency of associated systems such as Shop Floor Control and Master Production Scheduling.

System Integration

PDM integrates with the following systems:

**Inventory Management**
Supplies the basic information about each item (or ingredient), such as part number, description, unit of measure, stocking type, and location

**Shop Floor Control**
Uses bills of material and routings to process work orders and schedule work activity within the plant

**Manufacturing and Distribution Planning**
Uses the PDM information to plan finished goods and the raw material and purchased parts required to manufacture them

Uses sales orders and forecasts to pass demand for items down through the bills of material to the components

Uses the bills of material to determine component requirements for planned orders and work orders without a parts list

Creates a resource profile by retrieving a master scheduled item’s multi-level bill of material and selecting the routings for the components

**Product Costing and Manufacturing Accounting**
Uses bill of material, routing, and work center information to calculate total material, labor, machine, and overhead costs

Uses bills of material during a Cost Rollup to determine the material cost for the parent
<p>| Sales Order and Purchase Order Management | Use bills of material for kit processing |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Information</th>
<th>Routing Work Center</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Item</td>
<td>• Business Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Branch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bill of Material**

**Engineering Design and Changes**

**Manual Planning or MPS/MRP**

**Rates**

**Work Orders**

**Order Processing**

**Parts List**

**Routing Instructions**

**Availability and Shortage Checking**

**Pick/Issues**

**Record Hours and Quantities**

**Post Hours and Quantities**

**Completions**

**Payroll**
The Product Data Management system includes the following:

**Bills of material**
- Enter multiple bills of material to maintain many arrangements for an item without creating additional part numbers
- Access items online using item description search.
- Define quantities of intermediate products in any unit of measure as they progress through the manufacturing process
- Enter similar items by copying bills of material, routings, and processes and changing only unique information

**Work centers**
- Define work center number, description and link to business unit
- Define queue and move times
- Define operator, machine and hours per day capacity
- Define set up, labor, machine and overhead rates
- Define information for Capacity Planning
- Define where an item is produced

**Routings**
- Define each step of the manufacturing process with allowances for anticipated yield and scrap for each operation
- Add alternate operations to routings

**Process manufacturing**
- Define processes with co-products, by-products, and intermediates
- Define quantities of intermediate products in any unit of measure as they move through the manufacturing process
- Enter similar processes by copying ingredients, routings, and co-/by-products and changing only unique information

**Engineering Change Management**
- Control item changes from a single source
- Incorporate approved changes to bills of material automatically
System Concepts

The Product Data Management encompasses:

Bills of material  The components and relationships required to produce a parent item

Routings  The operations required to produce the parent item

Work centers  The facilities on the shop floor where the routing operations occur

Processes  An ingredient list and steps for blending or packaging the ingredients

Engineering change orders (ECOs)  The document that you use to define and implement changes to your products, production lines, and assembly processes

Enterprise Requirements Planning and Execution (ERPx) Review

Product Data Management is one of many systems in the ERPx system.

Use the ERPx system to coordinate your inventory and labor resources to deliver products according to a managed schedule. It is a closed-loop manufacturing system that formalizes company and operations planning, and the implementation of those plans.
The ERPx system includes the following J.D. Edwards systems:

**ERPx©**

**Enterprise Requirements Planning and Execution**

- **Strategic Business Plan**
  - Product Data Management (Systems 30 and 48)
  - Product Costing (System 30)
  - Configuration Management (System 32)
  - Inventory Management (System 41)
  - Sales Order Management (Systems 40 and 42)
  - Forecasting (System 36)

- **Tactical Plan**
  - Resource Requirements Planning (System 33)

- **Operational Plan**
  - Rough Cut Capacity Planning (System 33)
  - Capacity Requirements Planning (System 33)

- **Execution**
  - Finite Scheduler

- **Operational Plan**
  - Distribution Requirements Planning (System 34)
  - Master Production Schedule (System 34)
  - Material Requirements Planning (System 34)
  - Purchase Management (Systems 40 and 43)
  - Shop Floor Control (System 31)
  - Manufacturing Accounting (System 31)
Menu Overview

J.D. Edwards systems are menu driven. System functions are organized according to their function and frequency of use. Access the Product Data Management system menus from the Manufacturing Systems menu.

Menu Overview - Manufacturing Systems
Manufacturing Systems G3
Product Data Management G30

Daily Operations
- Daily Product Data Discrete Management G3011
- Daily Product Data Process G3012
- Engineering Change Management G3013

Periodic Operations
- Periodic Product Data Discrete Management G3021
- Periodic Product Data Process Management G3022

Setup Operations
- Product Data Management G3041

Advanced and Technical Operations
- Advanced Product Data Management G3031
Fast Path Commands

The following table illustrates the fast path commands you can use to move among the Product Data Management menus. From any menu, enter the fast path command at the command line.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fast Path</th>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>APD</td>
<td>G3031</td>
<td>Advanced PDM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC</td>
<td>G3013</td>
<td>Engineering Change Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO</td>
<td>G3013</td>
<td>Engineering Change Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPDD</td>
<td>G3011</td>
<td>Daily PDM Discrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPDP</td>
<td>G3012</td>
<td>Daily PDM Process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPDD</td>
<td>G3021</td>
<td>Periodic PDM Discrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPDP</td>
<td>G3022</td>
<td>Periodic PDM Process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPD</td>
<td>G3041</td>
<td>Setup PDM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Item Entry Overview

This chapter is an overview of item entry from the Inventory Management system. For information about item entry not included in this chapter, see the Inventory Management Guide.

Objectives

- To provide the system with details about the stock and non-stock items in inventory.

About Item Entry

Prior to working with your inventory, you must provide the system with information about the items you stock. When you enter each inventory item, you provide the system with details such as:

- Item identifiers
- Item descriptions (foreign and domestic)
- Item rules
- Item costs and prices
- Item weights and measures

You must also provide the system with information about the location of each item, including:

- The branch/plant where each item resides
- The locations used within each branch/plant

The system uses this information to help track and process each item through your distribution and manufacturing systems.
Entering an item includes two steps:

1. Enter item master information, which includes basic information about an item.
2. Customize the item master information to suit each branch or plant that the item occupies.
When you enter item master information, the system creates a record in the Item Master table (F4101). When you enter branch/plant information for an item, the system creates records in the Item Branch Master table (F4102) and the Item Location Information table (F41021).

**Item Branch Master (F4102)**
Item information that applies throughout the branch, such as:

- Category codes
- Planner/buyer numbers

**Item Location (F41021)**
Item information specific to certain locations. For example:

- On-hand quantities
- General Ledger class codes

To enter item information, complete the following steps:

- Enter item master information
- Enter branch/plant information

**Before You Begin**

- Read *System Setup*
- Set up G/L class codes
- Review and modify branch/plant constants
- Set up next numbers
- Set up default locations and printers
☐ Set up applicable user defined code tables, including:

- G/L posting categories
- Stocking type codes
- Units of measure
- Classification code categories
- Cost method codes
- Language preference codes
Enter Item Master Information

This chapter is an overview of item master information from the Inventory Management system. For information about item master information not included in this chapter, see the *Inventory Management Guide*.

**Entering Item Master Information**

From Inventory Management (G41), choose **Inventory Master/Transactions**

From **Inventory Master/Transactions** (G41), choose **Item Master Information**

You must enter general information for all stock and non-stock items. The system uses this information to identify and process each item in the distribution and manufacturing systems.

To enter item information, complete the following tasks:

- Enter basic item information
- Enter item text (optional)
- Assign item responsibility (optional)
- Enter item classification codes (optional)
- Enter item units of measure information (optional)
- Enter item manufacturing information (optional)
- Enter item grade and potency information (optional)

When you enter a new item, the system creates an item master record in the Item Master Information table (F4101).
What You Should Know About

**Setting up a template**

You might want to set up a template that contains common values for fields. Do this by entering an item with the common field values, later locate the item, and enter the new item information as necessary.

**Deleting item master information**

You cannot delete master information for an item if any of the following exists:

- Item branch records
- Bills of material
- Item cross-reference numbers
- Supplier relationships
- Sales prices

**Displaying additional item information**

You can set processing options to display additional item information subsequent to item master information (for example, item branch/plant information).

See Also

- *Entering Item Cost Information (P4105)* for information about entering master information that pertains to item costs
- *Entering Sales Price Information (P4106)* for information about entering master information that pertains to item prices
**Entering Basic Item Information**

To enter basic item information, complete the following tasks:

- Enter item identifiers
- Enter item descriptions and search text
- Enter item processing information

Each item can have up to three identifiers. You use the identifiers to locate the item. These identifiers can represent universal product codes (UPCs), bar codes, supplier numbers, or a user defined value.

In Branch/Plant Constants, you must specify a primary item identifier. You must also enter an item description and the text on which a user is most likely to search when trying to locate the item. You can also translate item descriptions and search text into multiple languages to accommodate those users who must locate items using alternate languages.

Item processing information consists of values that control how the system processes the item. These values pertain to stocking, packaging, accounting transactions, system interfaces, and so on.

**What You Should Know About**

**Locating other identifiers**

To locate an item using an identifier other than the primary identifier, you can perform a wildcard search by typing a special symbol, such as an asterisk (*), before the identifier. This only applies for forms that contain the Item Number field.

- *Defining Branch/Plant Constants (P41204)* for more information about specifying the primary item identifier

---

**To enter item identifiers**

On Item Master Information

Complete the following fields:

- Item Number – Short
- Product No (Product Number)
- Catalog No (Catalog Number)
See Also

- *Defining Branch/Plant Constants (P41204)* for more information about specifying the primary item identifier

To enter item descriptions and search text

On Item Master Information

1. To enter descriptions and search text in your native language, complete the following fields:
   - Desc (Description)
   - Srch (Search)
2. To enter descriptions and search text in alternate languages, access Item Alternative Description.

![Item Alternative Description](image)

3. On Item Alternative Description, complete the following fields:
   - LP (Language Preference)
   - Description
   - Search Text

To enter item processing information

On Item Master Information

Complete the following fields:

- Stocking Type
Enter Item Master Information

- G/L Class
- Line Type
- Bulk/Packed Flag
- Backorders Allowed
- Unit of Measure
- Check Availability Y/N
- ABC Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item Number – Short</td>
<td>An inventory item number. The system provides three separate item numbers plus an extensive cross reference capability to alternate item numbers (see data item XRT) to accommodate substitute item numbers, replacements, bar codes, customer numbers, supplier numbers, and so forth. The item numbers are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Item Number (short) – An eight-digit, computer-assigned item number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. 2nd Item Number – The 25-digit, free-form, user defined alphanumeric item number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. 3rd Item Number – Another 25-digit, free-form, user defined alphanumeric item number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Form-specific information

The first of three identifiers you can assign to an item. The system assigns this number if you activate the Next Number program. This field is numeric only.

If you leave the other two item identifier fields blank, the system copies this number to those fields.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Product No</td>
<td>The system provides three separate item numbers plus an extensive cross-reference capability to alternate item numbers. These item numbers are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Item Number (short) – An 8-digit, computer-assigned item number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. 2nd Item Number – The 25-digit, free-form, user defined, alphanumeric item number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. 3rd Item Number – Another 25-digit, free-form, user defined, alphanumeric item number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In addition to these three basic item numbers, an extensive cross-reference search capability has been provided (see XRT). Numerous cross-references to alternate part numbers can be user defined (for example, substitute item numbers, replacements, bar codes, customer numbers, or supplier numbers).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The second of three identifiers that you can assign to an item. This field is alphanumeric.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave the third identifier field blank, the system copies this number to that field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalog No</td>
<td>The system provides three separate item numbers plus an extensive cross reference capability to alternate item numbers. These item numbers are as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Item Number (short) – An 8-digit, computer-assigned item number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. 2nd Item Number – The 25-digit, free-form, user defined alphanumeric item number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. 3rd Item Number – Another 25-digit, free-form, user defined alphanumeric item number. In addition to these three basic item numbers, an extensive cross-reference search capability has been provided (see XRT). Numerous cross-references to alternate part numbers can be user defined, such as substitute item numbers, replacements, bar codes, customer numbers, or supplier numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The third of three identifiers you can assign to an item. This field is alphanumeric.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave the second identifier field blank, the system copies that number to this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>A brief description of an item, a remark, or an explanation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Srch:</td>
<td>A field that specifies how the system searches for an item. Your entry should be specific and descriptive of the item. Type the words in the order in which you are likely to enter them. In single-byte environments, where computer storage space can contain only Latin-based language character sets, the system inserts the first 30 characters from the item's description if you do not enter search text. In double-byte environments where computer storage space can contain more complex language character sets (in languages such as Japanese, Chinese, and Korean), you must complete this field. This is a single-byte field that you complete with single-byte characters to phonetically represent the item description (which can be single-byte, double-byte, or both).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stocking Type</td>
<td>A user defined code (41/1) that indicates how you stock an item (for example, as finished goods, or as raw materials). The following stocking types are hard-coded and you should not change them: B Bulk floor stock  C Configured item  F Feature  K Kit parent item  N Non-stock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| G/L Class    | A user defined code that identifies the G/L offset to use when the system is searching for the account to which it will post the transaction. If you do not want to specify a class code, you can enter **** (four asterisks) in this field. The table of Automatic Accounting Instructions (AAIs) allows you to redefine classes of automatic offset accounts for the Inventory, Purchase, and Sales Order Management systems. G/L categories might be assigned as follows: IN20 Direct Ship Orders  IN60 Transfer Orders  IN80 Stock Sales  

The system can generate accounting entries based upon a single transaction. As an example, a single sale of a stock item can trigger the generation of accounting entries similar to these: Sales—Stock (Debit) xxxx.xx  A/R Stock Sales (Credit) xxxx.xx  Posting Category: IN80  Stock Inventory (Debit) xxxx.xx  Stock COGS (Credit) xxxx.xx  

Although this field is four characters, the system uses only the last two characters of the Category and the last character of the Document Type to find the AAI.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Line Type             | A code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. It controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces (General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management). It also specifies the conditions under which a line prints on reports and is included in calculations. Codes include:  
S  Stock item  
J  Job cost  
N  Non-stock item  
F  Freight  
T  Text information  
M  Miscellaneous charges and credits  
W  Work order                                                                                                                                            |
| Unit of Measure       | A user defined code (system 00, type UM) that identifies the unit of measure that the system uses to express the quantity of an item, for example, EA (each) or KG (kilogram).  
............... Form-specific information ...............  
The default for this field is the primary unit of measure you specify in processing options.                                                                 |
| Bulk/Packed Flag      | A code that indicates if the item is a bulk liquid product. If it is a bulk product, you must perform temperature and density/gravity conversions. To record the movement of bulk products, you must use forms designed specifically for bulk products. If you try to record movement using standard inventory forms, the system prevents the movement. Valid values are:  
P  Packaged  
B  Bulk liquid                                                                                                                                                |
| Backorders Allowed    | A code that indicates whether you allow backorders for this item. You can allow backorders by item (through Item Master or Item Branch/Plant), or by customer (through Billing Instructions).  
Y  Yes, allow backorders for this item.  
N  No, do not allow backorders for this item, regardless of the backorders code assigned to the customer.                                                                                       |
|                        | NOTE: The system does not use this information if you have set the option on Branch/Plant Constants to indicate that you do not allow backorders in your operating environment.                                                                                                                   |
### Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Check Availability Y/N | This field controls whether availability checking is performed throughout the Sales Order Management system. You might want to check availability for some items. For other items, you can assume that an adequate supply is available. Valid values are:
Y | Check availability
N | Do not check availability

ABC Codes | A code that specifies this item’s ABC ranking by sales amount.
Valid values are:
A | Assign this item to the first (largest) amount ranking.
B | Assign this item to the second (intermediate) amount ranking.
C | Assign this item to the third (smallest) amount ranking.
D | Do not include this item when you run ABC Analysis.

There are three types of ABC analysis, which include sales, margin, and on-hand value. Within each type of analysis, you can have three groups, including A, B, and C.

The ABC Code fields contain a percentage that defines the A, B, and C groups for categorizing items during ABC analysis. Each group measures a total within the type of analysis.

For all groups, the system compares the appropriate sales, margin, or on-hand value totals of a single item to the appropriate total for all items and calculates the value of each item. An item’s value is its percentage of the appropriate total. The system arranges the values of all items from highest to lowest value and accumulates the percentages. Then, depending on the group, the system processes the information as follows:

A: If an item’s value causes the accumulated total to exceed the A accumulated percentage, the system assigns the item to the B group.
B: When the accumulated total reaches the percentage you entered for items in the A group, it continues to add values until it reaches the percentage you entered for items in the B group. The system assigns all items whose value falls between the A and B percentages to the B group.
C: The C group consists of items whose accumulated value exceeds the B percentage. The percentage that you usually enter for the C group is .999.
Entering Item Text

You might want to enter text about an item that others can view or print when working with the item. When you enter item master information, you can use one of two methods to enter item text:

- Attach messages to an item
- Enter notes for an item

Item messages are predefined, so you can attach the same message to multiple items.

Unlike item messages, item notes are not predefined. If notes already exist for an item, the words See Memo appear as highlighted text at the top of Item Master Information.

Before You Begin

Before you can attach a predefined message to an item, you must create text for the message. Where you create this text depends on the message type.

To attach messages to an item

On Item Master Information

Complete the following fields:

- Print Message
- Item Flash Message

To enter notes for an item

On Item Master Information

2. On Text Messages, enter the appropriate text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Print Message</td>
<td>A code that you assign to each print message. Examples of text messages are engineering specifications, hours of operation during holiday periods, and special delivery instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item Flash Message</td>
<td>User defined code system 40, type FL, which is used to flash a warning message about a particular item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assigning Item Responsibility**

When you enter master information for an item, you can specify those persons or businesses that are responsible for the item, including the buyer, planner, and preferred carriers.

Before you can assign a responsible person or business to an item, each must have an address book number in the Address Book system.
To assign item responsibility

On Item Master Information

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Planner Number
   - Buyer Number

2. Access Classification Codes from Item Master Information.

3. On Classification Codes, complete the following fields:
   - Sales: Preferred Carrier
   - Purchasing: Preferred Carrier

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Planner Number</td>
<td>The address number of the material planner for this item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buyer Number</td>
<td>The address number of the person responsible for setting up and maintaining the correct stocking levels for the item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales: Preferred Carrier</td>
<td>The address number for the preferred carrier of the item. The customer or your organization might prefer a certain carrier due to route or special handling requirements.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enter Item Master Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preferred Carrier</td>
<td>The address number for the preferred carrier of the item. The supplier or your organization might prefer a certain carrier because of route or special handling requirements.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

- Working with Basic Address Book Information (P01051) in the Address Book Guide for more information about adding address numbers

Entering Item Classification Codes

You might want to group items with similar characteristics so that you can work with the entire group at the same time. For example, for sales analysis, you can group items together for reporting purposes.

To group items, you assign classification codes to them. You can assign classification codes to items when you enter item master information or when you enter item branch/plant information.

There are several categories of classification codes. Each category represents a different item classification or property type, such as shipping conditions. From the shipping conditions category, you can select a code that indicates the condition under which you ship an item, such as fragile.

You can assign one of four groups of classification codes. Each group relates to one of the following J.D. Edwards systems:

- Sales Order Management
- Purchase Management
- Inventory Management
- Advanced Warehouse Management

Complete the following optional tasks:

- Enter sales classification codes
- Enter purchasing classification codes
- Enter inventory classification codes
- Enter warehouse classification codes
To enter sales classification codes

On Item Master Information

1. Access Classification Codes.

2. On Classification Codes, complete the following fields:
   - Sales Catalog Section
   - Sub Section
   - Sales Category Code 3
   - Sales Category Code 4
   - Sales Category Code 5
   - Preferred Carrier
   - Category Code 6
   - Category Code 7
   - Category Code 8
   - Category Code 9
   - Category Code 10

To enter purchasing classification codes

On Item Master Information
1. Access Classification Codes.

2. On Classification Codes, enter a classification code for each of the following fields:
   
   - Commodity Class
   - Commodity Sub Class
   - Supplier Rebate Code
   - Master Planning Family
   - Landed Cost Rule

To enter inventory classification codes

On Item Master Information

1. Access Classification Codes.

2. On Classification Codes, enter a classification code for each of the following fields:
   
   - Shipping Conditions Code
   - Shipping Commodity Class
   - Cycle Count Category

To enter warehouse classification codes

On Item Master Information

1. Access Classification Codes.

2. On Classification Codes, enter a classification code for each of the following fields:
   
   - Item Dimension Group
   - Warehouse Process Group 1
   - Warehouse Process Group 2
   - Warehouse Process Group 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sales Catalog Section</td>
<td>One of ten category codes for sales coding purposes. These codes can represent such things as color, material content, or use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub Section</td>
<td>One of ten category codes for sales coding purposes. These codes can represent such things as color, material content, or use. This field represents one of ten property type categories available for sales purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales Category Code 3</td>
<td>One of ten category codes for sales coding purposes. These codes can represent such things as color, material content, or use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category Code 7</td>
<td>One of ten category codes to be used for sales coding purposes. These can represent such things as color, material content, or use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Class</td>
<td>A code (table 41/P1) that represents an item property type or classification, such as commodity type, planning family, or so forth. The system uses this code to sort and process like items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is one of six classification categories available primarily for purchasing purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Sub Class</td>
<td>A code (table 41/P2) that represents an item property type or classification, such as commodity type, planning family, or so forth. The system uses this code to sort and process like items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is one of six classification categories available primarily for purchasing purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplier Rebate Code</td>
<td>A code (UDC table 41/P3) that represents an item property type or classification, such as commodity type, planning family, or so forth. The system uses this code to sort and process like items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is one of six classification categories available primarily for purchasing purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master Planning Family</td>
<td>A code (table 41/P4) that represents an item property type or classification, such as commodity type, planning family, or so forth. The system uses this code to sort and process like items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is one of six classification categories available primarily for purchasing purposes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field | Explanation
---|---
**Landed Cost Rule** | A user defined code (41/P5) that indicates the landed cost rule for an item. The landed cost rule determines purchasing costs that exceed the actual price of an item, such as broker fees, commissions, and so forth. You set up landed cost rules on Landed Cost Revisions.

*Form-specific information*

When you enter a purchase order for the item, this is the default landed cost rule. If you enter a landed cost rule for the entire purchase order, it overrides the landed cost rule for the item.

This is the only purchasing classification category that is hard coded. You can use it for landed cost rules only. This field corresponds to purchasing reporting code 5.

**Shipping Conditions Code** | A code (table 41/C) that represents an item property type or classification, such as special shipping conditions. The system uses this code to sort and process like items.

This field is one of three classification categories available primarily for inventory and shipping purposes.

**Shipping Commodity Class** | A user defined code (system 41/type E) that represents an item property type or classification, such as international shipment handling. The system uses this code to sort and process like items.

This field is one of three classification categories available primarily for inventory and shipping purposes.

**Cycle Count Category** | A code (table 41/8) that represents the family or cycle in which an item is counted. Cycle counting means that you count different inventory items at different times. Cycle codes commonly represent item values, item locations, time frames, or product groups.

*Form-specific information*

This inventory classification category is hard coded. You can use it for cycle count codes only.

**Item Dimension Group** | A code (system 41/type 01) that identifies a group of items that share the same size specifications, such as height and width. An item dimension group defines the size specifications for all items that belong to the group. After you set up an item dimension group, you can assign items to the group through Classification Codes.

---

**Entering Item Unit of Measure Information**

You must provide the system with the item units of measure that are most common to each of your distribution processes, such as sales, purchasing, and
so on. For example, you might purchase an item in pallets, stock it in boxes, and ship it in individual containers.

If you work with an item in multiple units of measure, you must specify how to convert one unit of measure to another. For example, if you stock items in boxes and crates, you must specify the number of individual items in a box and the number of boxes in a crate.

In some instances, the system must work with an item in its smallest (primary) unit of measure. The item conversions you specify must enable the system to trace all units of measure back to the primary unit of measure.

You can set up unit of measure conversions that are specific to an item or to an item and branch/plant combination. You specify whether item conversions are specific to a branch/plant in System Constants. You can also set up units of measure that are standard for all items.

You must set up all units of measure for an item in the Unit of Measure Conversion table (F41002) or the Standard Unit of Measure Conversion table (F41003). The system verifies the item unit of measure conversions before using standard unit of measure conversions.

Complete the following tasks:

- Enter default units of measure for items
- Define item unit of measure conversions
See Also

- Setting Up Standard Units of Measure (P41003)

To enter default units of measure for items

On Item Master Information

1. Access Default Units of Measure.

   ![Default Units of Measure](image)

2. On Default Units of Measure, complete the following field to locate the item:
   - Item Number

3. Complete the following fields:
   - Primary
   - Secondary
   - Purchasing
   - Pricing
   - Shipping
   - Production
   - Component
   - Weight
   - Volume
To define item unit of measure conversions

On Item Master Information

1. Access Default Units of Measure.
2. On Default Units of Measure, access Item Units of Measure.

3. On Item Units of Measure, complete the following fields:
   - Branch
   - Structured Only
   - Item Number
   - Primary UOM

   The Branch field displays only if item unit of measure conversions are specific to branch/plants.

4. For each unit of measure that the system must convert for the item, complete the following fields:
   - UM (Unit of Measure To)
   - Quantity
   - UM (Unit of Measure From)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 00, type UM) that identifies the unit of measure that the system uses to express the quantity of an item, for example, EA (each) or KG (kilogram).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is the primary stock accounting unit (PSAU) of measure that the system uses to store all inventory. If you change the primary unit of measure, the conversion factors in the item-level conversion table will no longer be valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field is the unit of measure that you specify for the item on Item Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>A code that indicates an alternate unit of measure for the item. See the User Defined Code table for system 00, record type UM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field is the primary unit of measure that you specify in processing options for Item Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purchasing</td>
<td>A user defined code (00/UM) that identifies the unit of measure in which you usually purchase the item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field is the primary unit of measure that you specify in processing options for Item Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pricing</td>
<td>A code (system 00/type UM) that indicates the unit of measure in which you usually price the item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field is the primary unit of measure that you specify in processing options for Item Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shipping</td>
<td>A code (table 00/UM) that indicates the unit of measure in which you usually ship the item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field is the primary unit of measure that you specify in processing options for Item Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production</td>
<td>A code (table 00/UM) that indicates the unit of measure in which you produce the item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Form-specific information</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field is the primary unit of measure that you specify in processing options for Item Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This code serves as the default for:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The order quantity when you create a work order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The batch quantity when you create a new bill of material or routing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The rate schedule quantity in Rate Schedule Revision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>A code (table 00/UM) that indicates the unit of measure for an item when it serves as a component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Form-specific information</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field is the primary unit of measure that you specify in the processing options for Item Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This code serves as the default value for:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The quantity per parent when you add the component item to a bill of material or work order parts list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The quantity in the assembly inclusion rules in Configuration Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 00/type UM) that identifies the unit of measure that the system uses to display weight for this item. You can specify ounces, grams, kilograms, and so on, as weight standards. The system uses this unit of measure for the item or overrides it for an individual item or container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Form-specific information</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field is the weight unit of measure you specify in processing options for Item Master Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume</td>
<td>A code (system 00/table UM) that indicates the unit of measure by metric conversion for ambient volume. For example, the unit of measure code for a gallon might be GL, or for a liter might be LT.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Enter Item Master Information

You can define manufacturing information about an item when you enter item master information. This information includes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirements planning information</th>
<th>Leadtime information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You enter requirements planning information to develop a planning forecast for the items that you use to run your distribution and manufacturing operations.</td>
<td>You enter leadtime information to calculate the time frames that are necessary to assemble or manufacture an item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structured Only</td>
<td>A code that determines whether the system displays all units of measure for an item and branch/plant or only the structured units of measure that have been set up for the Advanced Warehouse Management system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Form-specific information*

If you use the Advanced Warehouse Management system, you must structure conversions from large to small. For example:

- 1 Pallet (24 Cases) – Structure Code 1
- 1 Case (36 Boxes) – Structure Code 2
- 1 Box (6 Eaches) – Structure Code 3

You assign structure code 1 to the largest unit of measure and codes 2, 3, and so on, to the smaller units of measure.

NOTE: You do not have to define the primary unit of measure within a structure. This value is always the default for the lowest level.

| UM | A code (UDC table 00/UM) that indicates a secondary unit of measure. |

*Form-specific information*

The unit of measure from which you are converting. This unit of measure, in conjunction with the quantity, equals the unit of measure to which you are converting.

| Quantity | The factor that the system uses to convert one unit of measure to another unit of measure. |

*Form-specific information*

The quantity and the unit of measure from which you are converting must equal the unit of measure to which you are converting.
**Engineering information**

You enter reference information about the drawing plans for an item, so that you can refer back to the plans as necessary.

Complete the following tasks:

- Enter requirements planning information
- Enter leadtime information
- Enter engineering information

---

To enter requirements planning information

On Item Master Information

1. Access Manufacturing Values Entry.
2. On Manufacturing Values Entry, complete the following fields:
   - Value Order Policy
   - Planning Code
   - Planning Fence Rule
   - Accounting Cost Qty
• Round to Whole Number
• Planning Fence
• Freeze Fence
• Message Display Fence

To enter leadtime information

On Item Master Information

1. Access Manufacturing Values Entry.
2. On Manufacturing Values Entry, complete the following fields:
   • MFG Leadtime Quantity
   • Fixed/Variable
   • Leadtime Level
   • Leadtime Manufacturing
   • Leadtime Cumulative
   • Leadtime Per Unit
   • Issue Type Code

To enter engineering information

On Item Master Information

1. Access Manufacturing Values Entry.
2. On Manufacturing Values Entry, complete the following fields:
   - Drawing Size
   - Last Revision No
   - Drawing Number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Value Order policy</td>
<td>A field that the system uses in conjunction with the order policy code. It can show three types of data:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The value of the fixed order quantity when you select order policy code 2 (fixed order quantity).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The number of additional days of supply after demand is encountered when you select order policy code 4 (periods of supply).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The desired inventory level when you select order policy code 5 (rate scheduled item). If the ending available quantity does not meet or exceed the desired inventory level, then MPS/MRP/DRP generation issues an “increase rate to” or a “decrease rate to” message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning Code</td>
<td>A code that indicates how Master Production Schedule (MPS), Material Requirements Planning (MRP), or Distribution Requirements Planning (DRP) processes this item. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 Not Planned by MPS, MRP, or DRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Planned by MPS or DRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Planned by MRP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 Planned by MRP with additional independent forecast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Planned by MPS, Parent in Planning Bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 Planned by MPS, Component in Planning Bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>These codes are hard-coded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Planning Fence Rule   | A code (system 34, table TF) that the system uses in conjunction with the Planning Time Fence Days field to determine how forecast demand or actual customer demand is used. For example:  
  S  Use customer demand before the time fence and forecast after the time fence  
  F  Use forecast before the time fence and forecast plus customer demand after the time fence  
  For example, if you enter 5 in the Planning Time Fence Days field and S in this field, then the system uses only customer demand for the regeneration for the first 5 days. After 5 days, the system uses the forecast for the regeneration.  
  Valid codes are:  
  C  Customer demand before, greater of forecast or customer demand after  
  F  Forecast before, forecast plus customer demand after  
  G  Greater of forecast or customer demand before, forecast after  
  S  Customer demand before, forecast after  
  1  Zero before, forecast after  
  3  Zero before, forecast plus customer demand after |
| Accounting Cost Qty    | An amount that the system uses in the cost rollup program to determine the allocation of setup costs. The system totals the setup costs and divides the sum by this quantity to determine a unit setup cost. The default is 1. |
| Round to Whole Number  | A code that determines if an item should be rounded to the closest whole number for planning purposes. Valid codes are:  
  R  Round to the closest whole number.  
  Blank  Do not round.  
  For example, if the calculated requirements for an item are 4.6 and this field contains a Round to Whole Number code of R, the system rounds the quantity required to 5. If the calculated requirements are 4.4, the system rounds the quantity required to 4. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Planning Fence</td>
<td>The number of days that the system uses in conjunction with the time fence rule to determine how the forecast is used. Enter the number of days from the start date, after which the time fence rule changes from the first rule to the second rule. For example, if the time fence rule is S (customer demand before the time fence, forecast after the time fence), and the planning time fence is 5 days, the system plans for the first 5 days using customer demand. After the fifth day, the system plans using the forecast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze Fence</td>
<td>The number of days from the generation start date within which the system should not generate order messages. For example, if the generation start date is 01/01/99, and the freeze time fence is 6 days, the planning system does not issue messages with dates less than or equal to 01/07/99.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Display Fence</td>
<td>The number of days after the generation start date that the system should not generate order messages. For example, if the generation start date is 01/01/99, and the message time fence is 60 days, the system does not issue messages with dates greater than or equal to 03/01/99. However, the planning horizon for orders continues past this date and is reflected in available to promise totals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFG Leadtime Quantity</td>
<td>The quantity that determines the leadtime level for a manufactured item. Each of the routing steps for the item are extended by this quantity. For the system to calculate the leadtime level, the quantity in this field must be a value other than zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed/Variable</td>
<td>A code that determines whether the system uses fixed or variable leadtimes. This code works in conjunction with the value from either the Level Leadtime field or the Leadtime Per Unit field. Valid codes are: F Fixed leadtime – The system calculates work order start dates using the value from the Leadtime Level field. V Variable leadtime – The system calculates work order start dates using the value from the Leadtime Per Unit field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level Leadtime</td>
<td>A value that represents the leadtime for an item at its assigned level in the production process, as defined on Plant Manufacturing Data. The system uses this value to calculate the start dates for work orders using fixed leadtimes. Level leadtime is different for purchased and manufactured items: You can enter level leadtime manually on Manufacturing Values Entry, or you can use the Leadtime Rollup program to calculate it. To calculate level leadtime using the Leadtime Rollup program, you must first enter a quantity in the Manufacturing Leadtime Quantity field in the Item Branch table (F4102).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Manufacturing Leadtime| The total number of days required to build an item from its lowest level components to the final assembly. This value is the total of the level leadtimes for all manufactured items, plus the highest manufacturing leadtime for all its components.  
If all components are purchased, the manufacturing leadtime equals the item’s level leadtime. Purchased item leadtimes are not included in the calculation of manufacturing leadtimes.  
You can enter the manufacturing leadtime manually or you can have the system calculate it when you run the Leadtime Rollup program. |
| Cumulative Leadtime   | The total number of days required to build an item from its lowest level components to the final assembly. The system calculates the value differently for manufactured and purchased items.  
Manufactured – The total of all level leadtimes for all manufactured items, plus the highest cumulative leadtime of all its components.  
Purchased – The item’s level leadtime. Purchased item leadtimes are included in the calculation of cumulative leadtimes.  
You can enter this value manually or you can have the system calculate it when you run the Leadtime Rollup program. |
| Leadtime Per Unit     | The total number of hours required to build one unit as specified on the routing. This value is factored by the time basis code.  
You can enter this value manually, or you can have the system calculate it when you run the Leadtime Rollup program. The system overwrites this value when you run the Leadtime Rollup program.  
The system uses this field to calculate start dates for work orders when you use variable leadtimes. |
### Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Issue Type Code | A code that defines how the system issues each component in the bill of material from stock. In shop floor control, it indicates how the system issues a part to a work order. Valid codes are:
- I Manual issue (default)
- F Floor stock (no issue)
- B Backflush (when part is reported as complete)
- P Preflush (when parts list is generated)
- U Super backflush (at pay-point operation)
- S Sub-contract item (send to supplier)
- Blank Shippable end item
You can issue a component in more than one way within a specific branch/plant by using a different code on the bill of material and work order parts list. The bill of material code overrides the branch/plant value.

Drawing Size | A code that represents the engineering drawing size. For example:
- A A-size drawing
- D D-size drawing

Drawing Rev. Level | This number is a subset to the drawing number. It provides an additional description of the drawing and is useful should the system use an engineering drawing as a reference for this item.

Drawing Number | An engineering drawing number that might be the same as the part or item number.

---

**Entering Item Grade and Potency Information**

After you enter item master information or item branch/plant information, you specify whether grade or potency applies to an item. Grades enable you to classify items (for example, grade A eggs and grade B eggs). Potency allows you to specify the active ingredient in a product (for example, the percentage of alcohol in liquor).

When you activate grade or potency control for an item, you can enter a standard grade or potency for the item and a range of acceptable values. If you receive or issue items that are not within the range, the system provides a warning message. You cannot perform sales on items that are not within the range.

Item grade and potency are applicable only to items that are produced in lots. You cannot use both grade control and potency control for the same item.
See Also

- *Entering Information for Lots (P4108)* for information about specifying grade and potency values for lots

To enter item grade and potency information

On Item Master Information

1. Access Manufacturing Values Entry.
2. On Manufacturing Values Entry, complete the following fields:
   - Grade/Potency Pricing
   - Potency Control
   - Standard Potency
   - From Potency
   - Thru Potency
   - Grade Control
   - Standard Grade
   - From Grade
   - Thru Grade

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Grade/Potency Pricing | A code that indicates whether you price the item by grade or potency range. You must control the item by grade to price it by grade, just as you must control the item by potency to price it by potency. Valid values are:   
Blank  No potency or grade pricing 
1  Potency pricing 
2  Grade pricing |
| Potency Control   | A code that indicates whether you control the item by potency.               |
| Standard Potency  | The percentage of active ingredients normally found in an item.              |
| From Potency      | A number that indicates the minimum potency, or percentage of active ingredients, acceptable for an item.   
The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items that do not meet the minimum acceptable potency. The system does not allow you to sell items that do not meet the minimum acceptable potency. |
## Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Thru Potency | A number that indicates the maximum potency, or percentage of active ingredients, that is acceptable for an item.
The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items that have a potency that exceeds the maximum potency acceptable. The system does not allow you to sell items that have a potency that exceeds the maximum potency acceptable.

Grade Control | A code that indicates whether you control the item by grade.

Standard Grade | A code (table 40/LG) that represents the normal grade for an item.

From Grade | A code (system 40, type LG) that indicates the minimum grade that is acceptable for an item.
The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items with grades that do not meet the minimum grade acceptable. The system does not allow you to sell items with grades that do not meet the minimum acceptable level.

Thru Grade | A code (system 40, type LG) that indicates the maximum grade that is acceptable for an item.
The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items with grades that exceed the maximum grade acceptable. The system does not allow you to sell items with grades that exceed the maximum grade acceptable.

### What You Should Know About

#### Lots
You can specify the grade or potency of all items in a specific lot on Lot Master Revisions. If you do not specify a grade or potency, the system uses the standard grade or potency from Item Master or Item Branch Information.

#### Grade and potency ranges for sales purposes
You can specify an acceptable grade or potency range for each of your customers using preference profiles.

For more information, see Setting Up Preference Types in the Sales Order Management Guide.
See Also

- *Entering Information for Lots* (P4108) for information about specifying grade and potency values for lots

**Processing Options for Item Master Information - Revisions**

DEFAULT VALUES :

1. Primary Unit of Measure (Blanks=EA) ____________
2. Weight Unit of Measure (Blanks=LB) ____________

PROCESS CONTROL :

3. Specify the from and thru dates to be used for effective dates in the Item Notes File :
   - From Date (Blank = System date) ____________
   - Thru Date (Blank = 12/31 with the year = to the default value for the data dictionary item Century Change Year (#CYR))

4. Enter a ’1’ for each additional Item Master information screen to display when performing an add or change. If blank, the screen will not display.
   - Classification Codes . . . . .
   - Cost Revisions (Conditional)
   - Price Revisions (Conditional)
   - Units & Measures . . . . .
   - Manufacturing Values . . .
   - Bulk Product Information .
   - UCC Codes & UOM’s . . . . .

5. Enter a ’1’ to use the window version of the screens selected above. If left blank, the full screen versions will be displayed.

6. Enter a ’1’ to automatically call the Item Branch Program (P41026) when adding a new item number and return to the Item Master Screen. Enter a ’2’ to call the Item Branch program automatically and remain on the Item Branch Screen. If left blank, the Item Branch Program will not be called.

GLOBAL UPDATE:

7. Enter a ’1’ to transfer changes made to the 2nd (LITM) and the 3rd (AITM) item numbers to the Item Branch (P4102) item records.

(F19 from Item Master Revisions allows you to update other files).

or

Enter a ’2’ to transfer changes to records in the selected files (see User Defined Codes 40/IC).
Press F1 to display the selected files.

DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:
Enter the version to be used for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0001 is used.

8. Item Availability (P41202)  ____________
9. Item Branch (P41026)      ____________

DRAWING INFORMATION:
Enter a ‘1’ to protect item drawing information from update.  ____________

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Enter Branch/Plant Information

This chapter is an overview of branch/plant information from the Inventory Management system. For information about branch/plant information not included in this chapter, see the Inventory Management Guide.

Entering Branch/Plant Information

From Inventory Management (G41), choose Inventory Master/Transactions

From Inventory Master/Transactions (G4111), choose Item Branch/Plant Information

Information about an item might differ from warehouse to warehouse. For example, taxes might be applicable to an item in one warehouse, but not in another. You might also have different quantity requirements for each item based on the warehouse.

After you enter master information for an item, you can assign the item to different warehouses or branch/plants. You can then customize the item information for each branch/plant. You can also specify the locations in the branch/plant in which the item is stored.

Item A Information
Master Information

Information for Branch 10

Information for Branch 20
Every J.D. Edwards system that retrieves item information searches for an item’s branch/plant information before using an item’s master information.

You can enter item information for a single branch/plant or copy existing item information and duplicate it for multiple branch/plants.

To enter item branch/plant information, complete the following tasks:

- Assign an item to a branch/plant
- Work with item locations
- Enter item manufacturing information (optional)

After you enter item information for a specific branch/plant, the system creates a record in the Item Branch table (F4102).
What You Should Know About

Default values

Most fields on Item Branch/Plant Information are identical to those on Item Master Information. The system uses the default values from Item Master Information. The only fields that do not exist on Item Master Information are:

- Branch/Plant
- Sales Taxable
- Purchasing Taxable
- Country of Origin
- Supplier
- Margin Maintenance (%)

Accessing other branch/plant information

Use processing options to specify that other item information displays subsequent to item branch/plant information, such as item unit of measure defaults.
Assigning an Item to a Branch/Plant

After you enter master information for an item, you must assign the item to a specific branch/plant. After assigning the branch/plant, you can locate the item and branch/plant to customize the master information.

To assign an item to a branch/plant

On Item Branch/Plant Information

Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Item Number

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Branch/Plant</td>
<td>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, or branch/plant. You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department. Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority. Note: The system uses this value for Journal Entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table. Form-specific information This is the branch/plant or warehouse to which this item information is applicable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Working with Item Locations

After you assign an item to a branch/plant, you can indicate multiple locations in which the item resides. For each branch/plant, you can assign:

- A primary location
- Multiple secondary locations
The system usually processes an item through its primary location. For example, when you receive an item, the system assigns the item to its primary location, unless you specify a secondary location.

The system prompts you for the primary location immediately after you assign an item to a branch/plant. You can assign secondary locations to an item when you enter branch/plant information. The system automatically assigns a secondary location if you enter a location other than the primary location for an item when you receive it.

If you specify location control on Branch/Plant Constants, you can assign an item to only those locations set up on Branch/Plant Location Master. If you do not specify location control, you can assign an item to any location.

Each time you enter a location for an item, the system creates a record in the Item Location table (F41021).

In addition to assigning locations to an item and branch/plant, you can assign multiple lot numbers to each location. You can enter lot numbers manually when you enter item locations or when you receive the items.

Complete the following tasks:

- Assign a primary location to an item
- Assign a secondary location to an item
- Change the primary location for an item

**See Also**

- *Entering Information for Lots (P4108)* for information about defining lot details
- *Working with Lot Statuses (P00051)* for information about putting lots and locations on hold

► **To assign a primary location to an item**

On Item Branch/Plant Information

3. Assign a branch/plant to an item.
4. On Primary Location, complete the following fields:
   - Location
   - Lot

   ▶ To assign a secondary location to an item

On Item Branch/Plant Information

1. Access Item/Location Information.
1. On Item/Location Information, enter S in the following field to identify the secondary (S) locations for an item:
   - P/S (Primary/Secondary Location)
2. Complete the following fields for each secondary location and lot:
   - Location
   - Lot
   - Lot Status

► To change the primary location for an item

On Item Branch/Plant Information

1. Access Item/Location Information.

2. On Item/Location Information, enter P in the following field to identify the primary (P) location for the item:
   - P/S (Primary/Secondary Location)
3. Access Primary Location.
4. On Primary Location, complete the following fields:
   - Location
   - Lot
5. Return to Item/Location Information.
6. On Item/Location Information, complete the following field:

- **P/S (Primary/Secondary Location)**

After you change the primary location for an item, the previous primary location becomes a secondary location.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>A code that identifies inventory locations in a branch/plant. You define the format of the location identifier by branch/plant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Form-specific information</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you do not specify a location in this field, the system uses the blank location set up for the branch/plant in Branch/Plant Location Master.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lot/SN</td>
<td>A number that identifies a lot or a serial number. A lot is a group of items with similar characteristics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P S</strong></td>
<td>A value that indicates if this is the primary or secondary location for this item within this stocking location. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P Primary storage location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S Secondary storage location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> You can only have one storage area within each branch or warehouse marked as primary. In some cases, the system uses the primary storage area as the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lot status change</td>
<td>A user defined code (table 41/L) that indicates the status of the lot. If you leave this field blank, it indicates that the lot is approved. All other codes indicate that the lot is on hold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can assign a different status code to each location in which a lot resides on Item/Location Information or Location Lot Status Change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Form-specific information</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default for this field comes from the lot status code (including a blank value) that you assign to the item on Item Master Information or Item Branch/Plant Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The code that you enter here serves as the lot status default when you assign an item to a secondary location.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What You Should Know About

**Effects on quantities**  If you change an item's primary location and any of the following quantities exist, the quantities transfer to the new primary location:

- Quantity on backorder
- Quantity on purchase order
- Quantity on work order
- Other purchasing 1
- Quantity on soft commit

**Deleting a primary location**  To delete a primary location, you must first change it to a secondary location. No quantities can exist in the locations that you delete.

**Entering Item Branch/Plant Manufacturing Information**

You can define manufacturing information for an item that is specific to each branch/plant. This information includes:

**Requirements planning information**  You enter information about inventory shrinkage for the item to plan for the quantity you need to replace due to shrinkage.

**Leadtime information**  You enter leadtime information to calculate the time frames that are necessary to assemble or manufacture an item.

**Engineering information**  You enter reference information about the drawing plans for an item, so that you can refer back to the plans.

Complete the following tasks:

- Enter requirements planning information
- Enter leadtime information
- Enter engineering information
What You Should Know About

Default values

Most of the items on Plant Manufacturing Data are identical to those on Manufacturing Values Entry. The system uses the default values from Manufacturing Values Entry.

To enter requirements planning information

On Item Branch/Plant Information

1. Access Plant Manufacturing Data.
2. On Plant Manufacturing Data, complete the following fields:
   - Shrink Factor
   - Shrink Factor Method

To enter leadtime information

On Item Branch/Plant Information
1. Access Plant Manufacturing Data.
2. On Plant Manufacturing Data, complete the following fields:
   - Time Basis
   - Queue Hours
   - Standard Setup Hours

To enter engineering information

On Item Branch/Plant Information

1. Access Plant Manufacturing Data.
2. On Plant Manufacturing Data, complete the following fields:
   - ECO Reason
   - ECO Number
   - ECO Date
   - Item Revision Level

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shrink Factor</td>
<td>A fixed quantity or percentage that the system uses to determine inventory shrinkage for an item. The system increases the planned order quantity by this amount in MPS/MRP/DRP generation. The shrink factor method you specify for the item determines whether the shrink factor is a percentage or a fixed quantity. If you are entering a percentage, enter 5% as 5.00 and 50% as 50.00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shrink Factor Method</td>
<td>A value that determines whether the shrink factor you enter for this item is a percentage or a fixed quantity. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Percentage of order or requested quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F Fixed amount to be added to quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Basis</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 30, type TB) that identifies the time basis or rate for machine or labor hours entered for any routing step. You can set rates per unit, per 10, per 1000, and so on. The system uses the values in the Description-2 field on the User Defined Codes form for costing and scheduling calculations. The description is what the code represents, but is not used in calculations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Labor</td>
<td>The standard setup hours you expect to incur in the normal completion of this item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO Reason</td>
<td>A code (table 40/CR) that identifies the reason for the engineering change order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO Number</td>
<td>The number assigned to an engineering change order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO Date</td>
<td>The date of the engineering change order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item Revision Level</td>
<td>The revision level for an item. If you enter a revision level, verify that the revision level of the routing for an item matches the revision level on the bill of material for the item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Processing Options for Item Branch Information - Revisions**

**PROCESS CONTROL:**
1. Enter a ‘1’ to select the Item Location information screens to automatically call when performing an add or a change. If left blank, screen will not display.
   - Classification Codes
   - Cost Revisions (conditional)
   - Price Revisions (conditional)
   - Unit of Measure
   - Quantities
   - Manufacturing Values
   - Item Profile
   - Bulk Product Information

2. Enter ‘1’ to use the window version of the screens selected above. If left blank, the full screens will display.

**DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:**
3. Summary Availability (P41202)
4. Item/Location Information (P41024)
5. Test/Specification Revisions (P3710)

**REVISION LEVEL CONTROL:**
6. Enter ‘1’ to protect ECO revision information from update.
Processing Options for Item/Branch Duplication

DEFAULT VALUES:
1. Enter the branch/plants to which you want to duplicate the items:
   1)            ____________
   2)            ____________
   3)            ____________
   4)            ____________
   5)            ____________
   6)            ____________
   7)            ____________
   8)            ____________
   9)            ____________
  10)            ____________

SCREEN DEFAULTS:
2. Enter the data selection fields you want displayed on the video
   (Enter the data dictionary field name.):
   Data Item One              ____________
   Data Item Two              ____________
   Data Item Three            ____________
   Data Item Four             ____________

3. Enter a '1' to pre-load all selection options with a '1' to duplicate those lines.

FILE UPDATES:
4. Enter a '1' next to each file to duplicate. If left blank, the file will not be duplicated:
   Cost Ledger File           (F4105)             ____________
   Base Price File            (F4106)             ____________
   UOM Conversion Factors     (F41002)            ____________
   Bulk Depot/Product Info.   (F41022)            ____________
   Warehouse Item Profile     (F46010)            ____________
   Warehouse Item UOM/Profile (F46011)            ____________
Processing Options for Item/Branch Duplication - Batch Selection

UPDATE OPTIONS:
1. Enter the branch/plants to which you want to duplicate the items:
   1) ____________
   2) ____________
   3) ____________
   4) ____________
   5) ____________
   6) ____________
   7) ____________
   8) ____________
   9) ____________
  10) ____________

2. Enter a '1' next to each file to duplicate. If left blank, the file will not be duplicated.

   Cost Ledger File (F4105) ____________
   Base Price File (F4106) ____________
   UOM Conversion Factors (F4102) ____________
   Bulk Depot/Product Info. (F41022) ____________
   Warehouse Item Profile (F46010) ____________
   Warehouse Item/UOM Profile (F46011) ____________

Exercises
See the exercises for this chapter.
Process Manufacturing
Process Manufacturing

Objectives

- To understand the concepts of process manufacturing
- To set up and maintain processes
- To maintain ingredients, co- and by-products, substitutes, and intermediates for processes
- To set up and maintain process work centers
- To review and print process information

About Process Manufacturing

Process manufacturing adds value to a product by mixing, separating, forming, or performing chemical reactions.

Process manufacturing companies create a variety of items, including liquids, fibers, powders, or gasses. Pharmaceuticals, foods, and beverages are specific examples of these types of companies.

These manufacturers produce items in a two-step process:

- A mixing or blending step
- A filling or packaging step

This type of manufacturing can include intermediate steps, such as curing, baking, or fermenting.
Process manufacturing consists of the following:

- Setting up process manufacturing
- Working with work centers
- Working with processes
- Reviewing processes (optional)
- Working with leadtimes

**About Work Centers**

Work centers consist of people and machines. They are the specific production facilities on the shop floor where the routing operations occur. For each work center, you can define the following:

- Work center number and description
- Queue and move times
- Operator, machine, and work hours per day
- Rates for setup, labor, machine, and overhead

In process manufacturing, examples of work centers include vats, ovens, fermenting tanks, and blenders.

**Features**

Work centers enable you to:

- Set up a dispatch group for departments that perform similar operations
- Specify if an operation is a reporting point for material and or labor
- Define employees per work center
- Specify the work center efficiency for the Product Costing and Capacity Planning systems
- Define work center labor, machine, and setup rates
- Define overhead rates for labor and machine fixed and variable overheads
Work Center System Integration

Routing impacts:
- standard and actual costs
- generation of load hours in Capacity Requirements Planning
- calculation of leadtimes, dispatching, and shop scheduling

Product Costing:
- Work centers are considered one unit for product costing
- Standard Rate

Shop Floor Control:
- Work Center values impact leadtime calculations
Work Center Arrangement

This example illustrates a work center layout for sample process 777.

About Processes

Process manufacturing companies must produce, cost, plan, and schedule their products. Processes use a formula or recipe to add value to ingredients by mixing, separating, forming, or performing chemical reactions, in either batch or continuous mode.

Continuous mode does not use lots. Instead, products flow continuously rather than being divided.

Batch mode produces scheduled quantities. Batch mode is based on a formula or recipe that produces a specific number of end items. You can define different processes for items based on batch size, because many processes vary by quantity.

Processes are basis for creating a parts list for a work order in the Shop Floor Control system. Processes include an ingredient relationship and routing. This relationship defines information including effectivity dates, fixed/variable quantities, and queue and move times.

You can define a process item with ingredient relationships on the Enter/Change Process form. These relationships also determine co-products, by-products, intermediates, and substitutions.
You define the steps that are required to produce a manufactured item with process routings. These routings define work centers and labor standards. Process routings are critical for the Capacity Planning and Product Costing systems, and for measuring production efficiency.

**Example: Process 777**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredients</th>
<th>Routing</th>
<th>Co/By Products</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>10 Starch wash potatoes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 Drain water</td>
<td>By-Products Waste Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30 Add water, soak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40 Drain water</td>
<td>By-Products Waste Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frying Oil</td>
<td>50 Deep fry</td>
<td>By-Products Used Frying Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seasoning</td>
<td>60 Add seasoning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>80 Add preservatives</td>
<td>Co-Products Potato Chips</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Co-Products**

Many process steps create more than one output. A co-product is produced by process steps that are defined for specific ingredients. These are usually the main products that companies sell to customers. For example, the sample process “777 Potato Chips” creates one co-product, potato chips. Material Requirements Planning (MRP) plans for co-product demand, but does not plan for by-product demand.
By-Products

A by-product is produced as a residual or incidental item to the process steps. Companies can recycle, sell, or use by-products for other purposes. For example, the sample process “777 Potato Chips” creates two by-products: used frying oil and waste water. Material Requirements Planning (MRP) plans for co-product demand, but does not plan for by-product demand.

Ingredients

An ingredient is the purchased raw material or item that is combined during process manufacturing to produce the process end item.

Intermediates

Intermediates allow you to track the quantity of output of any operation in a work center at a specific time. You can define intermediates in different units of measure, item, or quantity. You can set up one intermediate per operation, but you cannot define an intermediate for the last operation.

Fermented liquid is an example of an intermediate. The liquid ferments for an extended period of time before being distilled. The resulting liquid is not a finished product, but it proceeds to the next operation.

Process Routings

A process routing details the method of manufacture for a specific process item. It includes operations, their sequence, work centers, and standards for setup and run. For a process routing, you can also define operator skill levels, inspection operations, and testing requirements.

Substitutes

You can define substitutes for a single ingredient within your process. You might need to do this for several reasons, such as quality concerns, inventory shortages, or supplier delivery problems.

Alternate Operations

You can define an alternate operation to be performed only as required, such as using oven B if oven A is unavailable. This information assists shop floor personnel, but it is not used by the Product Costing or ERPx systems.
Batch Processes

Food, petroleum and pharmaceutical industries use batch processes where items are produced in fixed quantities, or batches. The Batch Process feature allows you to define different processes for items based on quantity or batch size, since processes vary by quantity.

Percent Processes

Percent bills enable you to define processes with ingredient quantities expressed as a percent of the process batch quantity.

The system processes percent information as follows:

- Converts the batch quantity to the primary unit of measure for the process

The system stores quantities for components as follows:

- Calculates a percentage for the ingredient in relation to the batch size
- Converts the batch unit of measure to the ingredient unit of measure and stores the quantity for the ingredient

Example: Percent Process

The parent item is Soft Drink and its batch quantity is 300 GA.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Components</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>UM</th>
<th>F/V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vanilla</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>GA</td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>QT</td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concentrate</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>LT</td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The system calculates the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>% Calculation and Conversion to Batch Unit of Measure</th>
<th>Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vanilla = .5 X 300 = 150 GA</td>
<td>150 GA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water = .4 X 300 = 120 GA</td>
<td>480 QT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concentrate = .1 X 300 = 30 GA</td>
<td>114 LT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The system uses the ingredient unit of measure in the percent process to convert the number of gallons that correspond to the percent for each ingredient. In this example, the system calculates the ingredients water and concentrate to be 120 GA and 30 GA of the batch size. The system converts the unit to ingredient unit of measure and stores them as 480 QT and 114 LT.
You must set up unit of measure conversions for percent bills to work properly. Verify that all components can convert to the Batch Quantity Unit of Measure.

About Leadtimes

Determining leadtime is an essential part of any manufacturing or scheduling process. For any product that you purchase or manufacture, you encounter a time lag between when you order or start it and when you receive or finish it. To account for the lag, you must estimate the extra time and allow for it in your planning.

First, define leadtimes for an item at each routing step, then run the Leadtime Rollup program to update leadtime information in the item’s Manufacturing Data table.

See Also

- Appendix C — Leadtime Calculations

Tables

Process Manufacturing uses the following tables:

- **F3002** The Bill of Material Master table defines warehouse (plant level) information about bills of material, such as quantities of components, features, options, and levels of detail for each bill.

- **F3009** The Manufacturing Constants table contains constants for maintaining bills of material, such as the maximum number of levels in the bills and whether to write changes to the bills to the history file or to perform online validation.

- **F3011** The Bill of Material Changes table stores all changes made to any bill of material, including dates, ECO reasons, and effectivity dates.

- **F3003** The Routing Master table contains information describing how an item is manufactured, such as operation numbers, work centers, labor and machine hours, and outside operations.

- **F30006** The Work Center Master table contains the rates for each work center, such as overhead, crew size, number of machines, number of employees, efficiency, and utilization.
**F4101** The Item Master table stores basic information about each defined item, such as item numbers, descriptions, category codes, and units of measure.

**F4102** The Branch/Plant Master table defines and maintains plant level information, such as costs, quantities, physical location, and branch level category codes.

**F4104** The Item Cross Reference table stores information about relating item numbers together for a specific purpose. You may establish your own codes that define relationships.

**F0101** The Address Book table is the central repository for all address information relating to customers, vendors, employees, and prospects.

**F0006** The Business Unit Master table identifies branch, plant, warehouse, work center and business unit information, such as company, description (name), and category codes assigned to that unit.

**F30008** The Work Center Rates table stores work center rate information, such as simulated and frozen costs for labor and machines.

---

**Training Class Case Study**

The sample data for process manufacturing within ERPx systems covers the manufacture of hash browns, potato chips, ethanol, and potatoes from processed and purchased ingredients.

**Concepts**

- Co-products of one process are ingredients in next process.
- The item numbering system provides clues to these relationships. For example, process 222 yields co-product 2221.
- The sample processes are set up for branch/plant M40.
- Processes must be defined with stock type R.
The following table describes the processes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process</th>
<th>Part Number</th>
<th>Ingredient (stock type)</th>
<th>Co-product (stock type)</th>
<th>By-product (stock type)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>845 Potato</td>
<td>745</td>
<td>Potatoes (P)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5215</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waste Water (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8451</td>
<td></td>
<td>Food Grade Potato (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8452</td>
<td></td>
<td>Non-Food Grade Potato (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>888 Peeling</td>
<td>8451</td>
<td>Food Grade Potatoes (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5215</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waste Water (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8455</td>
<td></td>
<td>Peelings (M)</td>
<td>Potato Slices (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>222 Hash Browns</td>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Slice/Dice Potatoes (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2221</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hash Brown Potatoes (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777 Potato Chip</td>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Slice/Dice Potatoes (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waste Water (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5215</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Waste Water (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5215</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>522</td>
<td>Frying Oil (P)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Used Frying Oil (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5225</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>303</td>
<td>Seasoning (P)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7771</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Potato Chips (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>938</td>
<td>Nitrogen (P)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 Ethanol</td>
<td>8452</td>
<td>Non-food Grade Potato (M)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5215</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waste Water (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2468</td>
<td>Yeast (Sodium Bisulphate) (P)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>246</td>
<td>Enzymes (P)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2381</td>
<td></td>
<td>Potato Solids (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>809</td>
<td>Contaminant (P)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ethanol (M)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Set Up Process Manufacturing

Setting Up Process Manufacturing

You need to set up several user defined codes and constants that are unique to your branch/plants.

Setting up process manufacturing consists of the following:

- Setting up manufacturing constants
- Setting up bill of material types
- Setting up time basis codes
- Setting up standard procedure descriptions
- Setting up a shop floor calendar
- Setting up a make/buy table
- Setting up routing types
- Setting up kanbans

Before You Begin

- Define your items in the Inventory Management system. See Entering Item Master Information (P4101).

Setting Up Manufacturing Constants

From any Product Data Management menu (G30), enter 29
From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Manufacturing Constants
Establish information that is unique to your branch/plants. ERPx systems use manufacturing constants to determine:

- How to allocate, commit, and backflush inventory
- How to calculate overhead costs
- Whether to consider work center efficiency when calculating direct labor and overhead
- If an audit trail tracks all changes to bills of material
- Whether to validate bills of material online as you enter them

**To set manufacturing constants**

On Manufacturing Constants

![Manufacturing Constants](image)

Complete the following optional fields:

- Log Bill of Material Changes
- Online BOM Validation (Y/N)
- Master Routings (Y/N)
- Status for Changes
- Work Hours Per Day
- Hours
- Shift Code/Description
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| On-Line BOM Validation (Y/N)      | Determines whether the system performs an online component/parent validation and low-level code assignment when you revise a bill of material. Valid values are:  
  Y  Yes, validate items online.  
  N  No, do not validate items online.  
  Note: J.D. Edwards recommends that you validate items online (enter Y) unless your bills of material are extremely large.  
  Important: If you enter N, you must validate the items in batch. Run the Print Integrity Analysis program (P30601) after bill of material updates and before you run the Frozen Cost Update program (P30835) or perform a DRP/MPS/MRP generation (P3482). |
| Log Bill of Material Changes      | This field determines whether changes to the bill of material are recorded in the Bill of Material Change table (F3011). Valid values are:  
  Y  Yes, log changes.  
  N  No, do not log changes.  
  Blank will assume an N.  
  When you log bill of material changes, the system saves the old bill of material and the new changed bill of material. |
| Master Routings (Y/N)             | This field controls whether the system uses the master routing for an item or a routing defined for the parent item. Both routings are retrieved from the Routing Master table (F3003). Valid values are:  
  Y  Yes, use the master routing for an item, if one exists. The Shop Floor Control system will check the Item Cross Reference table (F4104), Cross Reference Type MR, for the parent item. If it finds a cross-reference, the system uses the master routing from the Routing Master table (F3003). If it does not find a cross-reference, the system uses the routing defined for the parent item.  
  N  No, do not check for a master routing for the item. The system will always use the parent item's routing from the Routing Master table (F3003). |
<p>| Status for Changes                | This field specifies the status beyond which work orders and rates can not be changed in the Line Scheduling and Line Sequencing Workbench programs. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Work Hours Per Day</td>
<td>The number of work hours that the manufacturing plant typically operates in a day. This value is calculated based on hours defined in the manufacturing constants fields WRHR + WRH2 + WRH3 (shift hours 1,2,3). This value is used in Back/Forward Scheduling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hours</td>
<td>The number of work hours that the manufacturing plant operates per day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Form-specific information</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For repetitive manufacturing, identify the number of work hours per shift for the specified branch. The Resource Generation program uses the corresponding shift hours to calculate the available resource units for each shift, and the total for the day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Since the shift hours may apply to different days of the week, the system uses the total of the first three hours to define the work hours per day value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift Code / Desc</td>
<td>A user defined code (07/SH) that identifies daily work shifts. In payroll systems, you can use a shift code to add a percent or amount to the hourly rate on a timecard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For payroll and time entry:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If an employee always works a shift for which a shift rate differential is applicable, enter that shift code on the employee's master record. When you enter the shift on the employee's master record, you do not need to enter the code on the timecard when you enter time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If an employee occasionally works a different shift, you enter the shift code on each applicable timecard to override the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Form-specific information</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For repetitive manufacturing, use the six corresponding shift fields to identify all production line shifts for the specified branch. The Resource Generation program uses the corresponding shift hours to calculate the available resource units for each shift, and the total for the day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up Bill of Material Types

From any Product Data Management menu (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Bill of Material Types

You can set up user defined codes (40/TB) to define bill of material types, such as manufacturing bills, rework bills, and spare parts bills.

To set up a bill of material type

On Bill of Material Types

![Screen capture of Bill of Material Types](image)

Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description

Setting Up Time Basis Codes

From any Product Data Management menu (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Time Basis Codes

You can set up user defined codes (30/TB) to define time basis codes. You use time basis codes to identify the rate used for machine or labor hours as you
enter a routing. The following programs use the time basis code value to determine run time per unit:

- Leadtime Rollup
- Product Costing
- Capacity Requirements Planning
- Shop Floor Control

**To set up a time basis code**

On Time Basis Code

![System Code](image)

Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description
- Description-2

**Setting Up Standard Procedure Descriptions**

From any Product Data Management menu (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Standard Procedure Descriptions
You can set up user defined codes (48/SN) to represent standard procedures for your company. For each code, you can define message text that is standard to your business.

If you use a standard procedure description code when you enter a routing, the system prints the standard procedure text on shop floor documents.

**To set up a standard procedure description**

On Standard Procedure Descriptions

![Image of Standard Procedure Descriptions](image)

1. Access General Message for a code.
2. On General Message, type the text for the message.

**Setting Up a Shop Floor Calendar**

From any Product Data Management menu (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Shop Floor Calendar

Use the shop floor calendar to define work days by month and year for all branches/plants. The system uses this calendar to determine:

- Manufacturing schedules
- Start dates for work orders
- Start and complete dates for work order routings

**To set up a shop floor calendar**

On Shop Floor Calendar
1. Locate the month and year you want to define.

The calendar on the left displays the calendar days for the month and year. The calendar on the right displays the defined work days.

2. To specify a work day, type W.

W is hard-coded. You can specify any other letter to indicate nonwork days.

**What You Should Know About**

**Using other day types** Use UDC table 00/TD to define work days. For example:

- A absent
- E weekend
- H holiday
- S shut down
- V vacation

**Defining shift calendars** You can define up to six shift calendars. The shift hours must match the hours you set up in the manufacturing constants table.

For production lines using the default shop floor calendar, leave the Shift and Calendar fields blank.
Setting Up a Make/Buy Table

From any Product Data Management menu (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Make/Buy Table

Use the Make/Buy table (41/I) to maintain codes that indicate whether an item is purchased or manufactured. For example, you can define types such as subassemblies and purchased raw material.

M (manufactured) and P (purchased) are hard-coded and appear in the first character in Description – 2. You can use any other letter to define additional Make/Buy values.

To set up a make/buy table

On Make/Buy Table

Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description
- Description–2
Setting Up Routing Types

From any Product Data Management menu (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Routing Types

You can set up user defined codes (40/TR) to define routing types such as alternate routing, standard manufacturing routing, rush routing, and rework routing.

To set up a routing type

On Routing Types

Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description
Setting Up Kanbans

From any Product Data Management Menu (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Kanban Master Revisions

Kanbans are authorizations to move or produce items to replenish consuming locations. You can use kanbans at the Branch/Plant level to control production and inventory movement on the shop floor.

To set up kanban master revisions

On Kanban Master Revisions

![Kanban Master Revisions Screen]
1. Complete the following required fields:
   - Branch/Plant
   - Item
   - Consuming Location
   - Supplying Location
   - Kanban Quantity

2. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Supplying Location B/P
   - Unit of Measure
   - Replenish Lead Time
   - Source Type
   - Phase
   - Receipts
   - Override Flag

If you leave the optional fields blank, the system uses default values.

**See Also**

- Processing Kanbans in the *Shop Floor Control Discrete Manufacturing Guide*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consuming Location</td>
<td>The storage location to which goods will be moved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplying Location</td>
<td>A code that identifies inventory locations in a branch/plant. You define the format of the location identifier by branch/plant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>The total size of the kanban.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM</td>
<td>A user defined code (00/UM) that indicates the quantity in which to express an inventory item, for example, CS (case) or BX (box).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replenish Lead Time</td>
<td>The time required before a consuming work center will have a replacement container of goods available from this supplying work center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This value is used only for KANBAN card processing in Shop Floor Control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Type</td>
<td>Indicates the type of supplying location for a kanban. Valid values are: 1 Work center, 2 Inventory, 3 Supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase</td>
<td>This field indicates the method used to transfer completed units from the supplying to the consuming location: 1 One phase transfer. The completion is done directly to the consuming location. 2 Two phase transfer. The completion is performed against the supplying location. A subsequent receipt of inventory is needed at the consuming location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Location B/P</td>
<td>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, or branch/plant. You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department. Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority. Note: The system uses this value for Journal Entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receipts</td>
<td>Flag used to indicate the receipts process will be executed at Kanban check in time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Override</td>
<td>This flag can be used to lock the kanban size and quantity to prevent changes by the Kanban calculation program.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Work With Work Centers

Working With Work Centers

Work centers consist of people and machines. They are the specific production facilities on the shop floor where the routing operations occur. For each work center, you can define the following:

- Work center number, description, and link to business unit
- Queue and move times
- Operator, machine, and hours per day capacity
- Set up, labor, machine, and overhead rates

In process manufacturing, examples of work centers include ovens, vats, and mixers.

Complete the following tasks:

- Enter work centers
- Enter costing and accounting information
- Review operations by work center (optional)

The system stores work center information in the Work Center Master table.

Before You Begin

- Define all work centers as business units. See Defining Business Units (P0006A).
Entering Work Centers

Enter work center information that corresponds to the facilities on your shop floor.

Complete the following tasks:

- Enter a work center
- Enter work center hours

To enter a work center

On Work Center Master Revisions

1. To identify the work center, complete the following fields and click Add:
   - Work Center (required)
   - Dispatch Group
2. To enter repetitive manufacturing information, complete the following fields:
   - Work Center Type
   - Calendar Name
   - Capacity Standard
   - Capacity UOM
• Capacity Minimum
• Capacity Maximum
• Hours
• Shift Code/Description

3. Complete the following fields:
• Pay Point Code
• Prime Load Code
• Critical Work Center
• Crew Size
• Number of Machines
• Number of Employees
• Resource Offset
• Efficiency
• Utilization
• Location
• Branch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Work Center</td>
<td>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, or branch/plant. You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department. Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority. Note: The system uses this value for Journal Entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dispatch Group</td>
<td>A super category code to group work centers within an overall business unit. For example, you can group like machines operating out of several work centers that report to one business unit under a dispatch group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Work Center Type      | Defines the type of work center. Possible values are:  
- Blank Stand alone work center  
- Production line in a repetitive environment  
- Reporting work station within a production line  

Form-specific information  
For repetitive manufacturing, the system verifies the value is not valid as a work center for an operation from the routing. |
| Calendar Name         | Enter the value of the calendar which corresponds to the calendar type. For example, if the calendar type is ROUTE, enter a valid route code to display the calendar for a particular route. |
| Capacity Std          | The standard capacity level at which a production line usually operates.                                                                                                                                  |
| Capacity Min          | The lower limit capacity beyond which the production line should not operate. This value is decided by management based on efficiencies, costs, etc.                                                        |
| Capacity Max          | The upper limit capacity beyond which a production line can not produce.                                                                                                                                     |
| Hours                 | The number of work hours that the manufacturing plant operates per day.                                                                                                                                      |

Form-specific information  
For repetitive manufacturing, identify the number of work hours per shift for the specified work center. Use the six corresponding shift fields to identify all production line shifts for the specified work center. |
| Shift Code / Description | A user defined code (07/SN) that identifies daily work shifts. In payroll systems, you can use a shift code to add a percent or amount to the hourly rate on a timecard.  

For payroll and time entry:  
If an employee always works a shift for which a shift rate differential is applicable, enter that shift code on the employee's master record. When you enter the shift on the employee's master record, you do not need to enter the code on the timecard when you enter time.  
If an employee occasionally works a different shift, you enter the shift code on each applicable timecard to override the default. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pay Point Code</td>
<td>A code that indicates if a work center will have labor, material, or both, backflushed through it when quantities are reported against operations occurring in the work center. The default value for this code is the routing sequence record unless overridden when the routing is defined. Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 Not a backflush work center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B Backflush material and labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M Backflush material only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L Backflush labor only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P Preflush material only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave this field blank, the system uses the value in the Enter/Change Routing table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prime Load Code</td>
<td>This value determines if a work center is machine or labor intensive. These codes are also used in Resource Requirements Planning and Capacity Requirements Planning calculations to develop load profiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Valid codes are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L Run labor hours only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M Machine hours only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B Run labor plus setup labor hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C Machine plus setup hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O Other (will not generate resource units)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Work Center</td>
<td>A code that identifies the work center as critical or not critical when the system calculates capacity. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N Not a critical work center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 A critical work center in calculating resource requirement planning only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 A critical work center in calculating capacity requirements planning only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 A critical work center in calculating resource requirements planning and capacity requirements planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Not a capacity work center (will not be generated in capacity planning)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE: The system displays Type 3 work centers whenever type 1 or type 2 is selected in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crew Size</td>
<td>The number of people who work in the specified work center or routing operation. The system multiplies the Run Labor value in the Routing Master table (F3003) by crew size during costing to generate total labor dollars. If the Prime Load Code is L or B, the system uses the total labor hours for backscheduling. If the Prime Load Code is C or M, the system uses the total machine hours for backscheduling without modification by crew size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Machines</td>
<td>This represents the normal number of machines in this work center. When you run the Work Center Resource Units Refresh program, this number is multiplied by the number of work hours per day from the Manufacturing Constants table (F3009) to generate the total gross machine hours available in the work center each day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Employees</td>
<td>This represents the normal number of employees in this work center. When you run the Work Center Resource Units Refresh program, the system multiplies this number by the Number of Work Hours Per Day from the Manufacturing Constants table (F3009) to generate the total gross labor hours available in the work center each day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Offset</td>
<td>A value used in the Resource Profile table (F3303) to determine the number of days that the actual use of a work center resource should be offset from the forecasted need date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efficiency</td>
<td>A user defined value that indicates how efficiently a work center operates. This value usually refers to people efficiency. When you enter a value in this field, and the Modify Cost by Work Center Efficiency field in the Job Shop Manufacturing Constants table (F3009) is set to Y, the system creates a new cost component (B4) from the cost calculated from the direct labor cost (B1). The system also uses this value to calculate rated capacity. Example: If the constant is set to Y, the value of this field is 80%, and the direct labor cost is 10, the system creates a B4 cost component for 2 in the Item Cost Component Add-Ons table (F30026). Enter percents as whole numbers, for example, enter 80% as 80.00.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Work With Work Centers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Utilization</td>
<td>A percentage that indicates how intensively a work center is being used. This value usually refers to machine use. It is the ratio of the direct time charged for production activities to the planned hours. This value is also used to calculate rated capacity. Enter percents as whole numbers, for example, enter 80% as 80.00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location Branch</td>
<td>This is the branch plant of the location associated with the work center.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To enter work center hours

On Work Center Master Revisions

Complete the following fields:

- Queue Hours
- Move Hours
- Replenishment Hours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Queue Hours</td>
<td>The total time (in hours) that an order is expected to be in queue at work centers and moving between work centers. The system stores this value in the Item Branch table (F4102). You can calculate this value using the Leadtime Rollup program or you can enter it manually. When you run the Leadtime Rollup program, the system overrides manual entries with calculated values. Form-specific information If the Routing Master values are blank, the default value comes from the work order routing. However, the system uses these values only for back scheduling variable leadtime items.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A8.1 (8/97) 2-31
### Entering Costing and Accounting Information

After you enter a work center, you can enter simulated rates for machine and labor hours. The Product Costing and Manufacturing Accounting systems use these values to generate reports, rollups, and journal entries. The Cost Rollup program uses all of these values to calculate the simulated cost.

You can update the simulated rates, but not the frozen values. The system updates frozen values when you run Frozen Update.

#### To enter costing and accounting information

On Work With Work Centers

1. Select a work center.

On Work Center Master Revisions

2. Select Rates from the Form menu.
On Work With Work Center Rates

3. Select a work center.

On Work Center Rate Revisions

4. Complete the following fields:
   - Cost Method
   - Direct Labor (Simulated)
   - Setup Labor (Simulated)
   - Labor Variable Overhead (Simulated)
   - Labor Fixed Overhead (Simulated)
   - Machine Run (Simulated)
   - Machine Variable Overhead (Simulated)
   - Machine Fixed Overhead (Simulated)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cost Method</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 40, type CM) that identifies a cost method. Cost methods 01 through 08 are hard-coded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This code was entered on Branch/Plant Constants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct Labor Simulated</td>
<td>This rate, in cost per hour, is the rate used to calculate the current labor cost as of the last simulation and update.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field | Explanation
--- | ---
Setup Labor Simulated | This rate, in cost per hour, is the rate used to calculate the current setup labor cost as of the last simulation and update.
Labor Var. Overhead Simulated | This rate, in cost per hour or percent of labor, is the rate used to calculate the current variable labor overhead cost as of the last simulation and update.
Labor Fixed Overhead Simulated | This rate, in cost per hour or percent of labor, is the rate used to calculate the current fixed labor overhead cost as of the last simulation and update.
Machine Run Simulated | This rate, in cost per hour, is the rate used to calculate the current machine cost as of the last simulation and update.
Machine Var. O/H Simulated | This rate, in cost per hour or percent of labor, is the rate used to calculate the current variable machine overhead cost as of the last simulation and update.
Machine Fixed O/H Simulated | This rate, in cost per hour or percent of labor, is the rate used to calculate the current fixed machine overhead cost as of the last simulation and update.

**See Also**

- *Creating Rate Schedules (P3104)* in the *Shop Floor Control Guide*
- *Updating Frozen Costs (P30835)* in the *Product Costing and Manufacturing Accounting Guide*

**Reviewing Operations by Work Center**

You can review operations by work center to:

- Plan capacity, resource and manpower
- Evaluate equipment needs
- Display which items include routing operations at the work center

**To review operations by work center**

On Work With Work Center Where Used
Complete the following required fields:

- Work Center
- Branch/Plant

The following fields display work center hour information:

- Machine Hours
- Labor Hours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Run Hours Machine</td>
<td>This is the standard machine hours expected to be incurred in the normal production of this item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run Hours Labor</td>
<td>This is the standard hours of labor expected in the normal production of this item. The run labor hours in the Routing Master table (F3003) are the total hours it takes the specified crew size to complete the operation. The hours are multiplied by the crew size during shop floor release and product costing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises**

See the exercises for this chapter.
Test Yourself: Working With Work Centers

1. True or False
   You must set up every work center as a valid business unit.

2. True or False
   A pay point code of P indicates that the work center will have both labor and material backflushed through it.

3. True or False
   The Work Center Rate Revisions form is where you maintain all cost methods for a work center.

4. True or False
   Frozen costs are updated manually using the Work Center Rate Revisions form.

5. True or False
   Move and queue hours are used for reference only.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Working With Processes

Processes allow process manufacturing companies to produce, cost, plan, and schedule their products. Processes use a formula or recipe that includes an ingredient relationship and routing.

Working with processes consists of the following tasks:

- Enter processes
- Working with operations
- Working with ingredients
- Entering production information
- Entering co- and by-products
- Entering intermediates
- Working with text
- Updating component scrap
- Changing multiple processes
- Verifying processes

As you define a process, you combine information from the Manufacturing Constants, Item Master, Routing, and Branch/Plant tables. The resulting process is stored in the Bill of Material table. Changes are stored in the Bill of Material Audit table (if you choose to track them).

Before You Begin

- To use batch processing, set the processing options for Enter/Change Process and Work Order Entry to activate batch and type functions.
- Define routings that correspond to your process types and batch sizes.
Enter Processes

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process

From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Enter/Change Process

To enter a process

On Enter/Change Process

1. Complete the following required fields:
   - Branch/Plant
   - Process

2. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Routing Type
   - Line/Cell

3. Complete the following optional fields with batch information:
   - Batch Quantity
   - Batch Quantity Unit of Measure
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item Number</td>
<td>A number that the system assigns to an item. It can be in short, long, or 3rd item number format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Routing Type       | User defined code (system 40, type TR) that designates the type of routing. You can define different types of routing instructions for different uses. For example:  
  M    Standard Manufacturing Routing  
  RWK  Rework Routing  
  RSH  Rush Routing  

You define the routing type on the work order header. The specific type of routing defined will then be used in the work order routing.  
Product Costing and Capacity Planning systems use only M type routings. |
| Line/Cell          | Defines a production line or cell. Detailed work center operations can be defined inside the line or cell. For rate based manufacturing to use this value for reporting, this value must match the line cell in the header. |
| Batch Quantity     | The quantity of finished units that you expect this bill of material or routing to produce. This field allows you to specify varying quantities of components based on the amount of finished goods produced. For example, 1 ounce of solvent is required per unit up to 100 units of finished product. However, if 200 units of finished product is produced, 2 ounces of solvent are required per finished unit. In this example, you would set up batch quantities for 100 and 200 units of finished product specifying the proper amount of solvent per unit. |
| UOM                | Production unit of measure used to express the capacity of a production line. For example Stamps, injections, etc.                         |

**What You Should Know About**

**Reviewing equipment**  
On Asset Search & Location, you can review equipment that an operation uses to manufacture a certain part.

**Deleting processes**  
When you delete a process, the system prompts you to confirm the deletion.
Working With Operations

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process
From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Enter/Change Process

After you enter a process, you must enter the process operations. These operations define the work centers and labor standards required to manufacture the process item.

Complete the following tasks:

- Enter operations
- Enter outside operations (optional)
- Enter work center hours

To enter an operation

On Enter/Change Process

1. Access the detail area.

2. Complete the following required fields:
   - Work Center
   - Operation Sequence Number
3. Complete the following optional fields:
   - Description
   - Effective From
   - Effective Thru
   - Next Operation
   - Yield Percent
   - Type Operation
   - Pay Point
   - Craft
   - Percent of Overlap
   - Equipment Number
   - Standard Description
   - Crew Size
   - Time Basis
   - Line/Cell

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oper Seq No</td>
<td>In routings, this number is used to sequence the fabrication or assembly steps in the manufacture of an item. You can track costs and charge time by operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In bills of material, this number designates the routing step in the fabrication or assembly process that requires a specified component part. You define the operation sequence after you create the routing for the item. The Shop Floor Control system uses this field in the backflush/preflush by operation process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In engineering change orders, this number is used to sequence the assembly steps for the engineering change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Skip To fields allow you to enter an operation sequence that you want to begin the display of information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can use decimals to add steps between existing steps. For example, use 12.5 to add a step between steps 12 and 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Eff. From| A date that indicates one of the following:  
  - When a component part goes into effect on a bill of material  
  - When a routing step goes into effect as a sequence on the routing for an item  
  - When a rate schedule is in effect  
  The default is the current system date. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes. Items that are no longer effective in the future can still be recorded and recognized in Product Costing, Shop Floor Control, and Capacity Requirements Planning. The Material Requirements Planning system determines valid components by effectivity dates, not by the bill of material revision level. Some forms display data based on the effectivity dates you enter. |
| Eff. Thru| A date that indicates one of the following:  
  - When a component part is no longer in effect on a bill of material  
  - When a routing step is no longer in effect as a sequence on the routing for an item  
  - When a rate schedule is no longer active  
  The default is December 31 of the default year defined in the Data Dictionary for Century Change Year. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes. Items that are no longer effective in the future can still be recorded and recognized in Product Costing, Shop Floor Control, and Capacity Requirements Planning. The Material Requirements Planning system determines valid components by effectivity dates, not by the bill of material revision level. Some forms display data based on the effectivity dates you enter. |
| Next Oper| The operation number that the current operation can simultaneously be processed with.                                                                                                                                 |
| Yield %  | Represents the planned output yield percent for a step. The Planned Yield Update program uses this value to update the Cumulative Percent in the bill of material and the Operation Scrap Percent in the routing. Materials Requirements Planning uses the step scrap percent and the existing component scrap percent to plan component demand. |
Field | Explanation
---|---
Typ Op | A user defined code (system 30, type OT) that indicates the type of operation. For example:
- A: Alternate routing
- TT: Travel time
- IT: Idle time
- T: Text (Enter text at Description)

Form-specific information

For Product Costing:
Only operations with a “blank” type operation code are costed.

Craft. BB | A user defined code (07/G) that defines the jobs within your organization. You can associate pay and benefit information with a job type and apply that information to the employees who are linked to that job type.

% Overlap | The overlapping of successive operations. The actual overlap percentage entered for the operation sequence is the percent by which that operation overlaps the prior operation. For example, if you enter 80%, this indicates that work can begin on the overlapped operation when 20% of the prior operation is completed.

Notes:
1. Overlapping has no effect on move and queue calculations.
2. The percent entered must be less than or equal to 100%.

Enter percents as whole numbers: 5% as 5.00

Time Basis | A user defined code (system 30, type TB) that identifies the time basis or rate for machine or labor hours entered for any routing step. You can set rates per unit, per 10, per 1000, and so on.

The system uses the values in the Description-2 field on the User Defined Codes form for costing and scheduling calculations. The description is what the code represents, but is not used in calculations.

To enter outside operations

On Enter/Change Process

1. Access the detail area.
2. Complete the following fields:

- Supplier
- Purchase Order (Y/N)
- Cost Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supplier</td>
<td>The address book number of the preferred provider of this item. You can enter the number for the supplier or you can have the system enter it each time that you receive the item from a supplier. You specify whether the system enters the supplier using processing options for Enter Receipts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO (Y/N)</td>
<td>Determines if the Work Order Generation program (P31410) creates a purchase order for a subcontracted operation within a routing. Valid values are: Y Yes, create a purchase order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Type</td>
<td>This code designates each element of cost for an item. An example of the coding structure is: A1 Purchased raw material B1 Direct labor routing sheet rollup B2 Setup labor routing sheet rollup C1 Variable burden routing sheet rollup C2 Fixed burden routing sheet rollup Dx Usually used for outside processing routing sheet rollup Xx Usually used for extra add-ons, such as electricity, water, and so forth The optional add-on computations usually operate with the type “X” extra add-ons. This cost structure allows you to use an unlimited number of cost components to calculate alternative cost rollups. The system then associates these cost components with one of six user defined summary cost buckets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

➤ To enter work center hours

On Enter/Change Process
1. Access the detail area.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Run Hours Machine
   - Run Hours Labor
   - Setup Hours
   - Queue Hours
   - Move Hours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Labor Run Hours</td>
<td>This is the standard hours of labor expected in the normal production of this item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The run labor hours in the Routing Master table (F3003) are the total hours it takes the specified crew size to complete the operation. The hours are multiplied by the crew size during shop floor release and product costing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>................ Form-specific information ................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For Equipment/Plant:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is the estimated number of hours needed to complete a maintenance activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Hours</td>
<td>The standard setup hours you expect to incur in the normal completion of this item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Working With Ingredients**

**From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process**

**From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Enter/Change Process**

After you define operations for each process, enter the ingredients. These are the raw materials or items that are combined during operations to produce the process item.

Complete the following tasks:

- Enter an ingredient (required)
- Enter grade and potency information
- Enter a substitute ingredient
- Enter ingredients as percent
To enter an ingredient

On Process Resource Revisions

Complete the following fields:

- Ingredient
- Quantity Per
- Unit of Measure
- Effective From
- Effective Thru
- Ingredient Branch
- Ingredient Line Number
- Operation Sequence Number
- Percent of Scrap
- Partial Allowed (Y/N)
- Line Type
- Remarks
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Quantity Per          | The number of units to which the system applies the transaction.  
**Form-specific information**  
The quantity of a co-/by-product produced at the current step in the process. |
| Component Branch      | A secondary or higher level business unit. Sometimes used to reference a branch or plant with several departments or jobs subordinate to it.  
Branch/Plant – (MCU)  
Dept A – (MCU)  
Dept B – (MCU)  
Job 123 – (MCU) |
| Line Number           | A number that indicates the sequence of the components on a bill of material. It initially indicates the relative sequence in which a component was added to a kit or single level bill of material. You can modify this number to change the sequence in which the components appear on the bill of material.  
Skip To fields allow you to enter a component line number that you want to begin the display of information. |
| % of Scrap            | Scrap is the percentage of unusable component material created during the manufacture of a particular parent item. During DRP/MPS/MRP generation, the system increases gross requirements for the component item to compensate for the loss.  
Note: Shrink is the expected loss of parent items (and hence, components) due to the manufacturing process. Shrink and scrap are compounded to figure the total loss in the manufacture of a particular item. Accurate shrink and scrap factors can help to produce more accurate planning calculations.  
Enter percents as whole numbers: 5% as 5.0 |
| Partial Allowed (Y/N) | When you specify component and substitute items on the bill of material, this field indicates whether the total quantity is required to be available or if a partial quantity available is acceptable to commit.  
Example: 100 lb of item A is available:  
150 lb of item A is needed. If substitutes are not used and Partially Allowed is set to Y for item A, then the 100 lb will be committed. If substitute processing is used, substitutes will be checked next, and Partially Allowed on the substitute record will be considered. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Line Type</td>
<td>A code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. It controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces (General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management). It also specifies the conditions under which a line prints on reports and is included in calculations. Codes include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S    Stock item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J    Job cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N    Non-stock item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F    Freight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T    Text information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M    Miscellaneous charges and credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>W    Work order</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To enter grade and potency information**

You can enter either grade or potency information, but not both.

On Enter/Change Process

1. Choose the Ingredients option.
2. On Process Resource Revisions, access the detail area.
3. For grade information, complete the following fields:
   - From Grade
   - Thru Grade
4. For potency information, complete the following fields:
   - From Potency
   - Thru Potency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From Grade</td>
<td>A code (system 40, type LG) that indicates the minimum grade that is acceptable for an item. The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items with grades that do not meet the minimum grade acceptable. The system does not allow you to sell items with grades that do not meet the minimum acceptable level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thru Grade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Potency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thru Potency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thru Grade</td>
<td>A code (system 40, type LG) that indicates the maximum grade that is acceptable for an item. The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items with grades that exceed the maximum grade acceptable. The system does not allow you to sell items with grades that exceed the maximum grade acceptable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From Potency</td>
<td>A number that indicates the minimum potency, or percentage of active ingredients, acceptable for an item. The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items that do not meet the minimum acceptable potency. The system does not allow you to sell items that do not meet the minimum acceptable potency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thru Potency</td>
<td>A number that indicates the maximum potency, or percentage of active ingredients, that is acceptable for an item. The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items that have a potency that exceeds the maximum potency acceptable. The system does not allow you to sell items that have a potency that exceeds the maximum potency acceptable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To enter a substitute ingredient**

On Process Resource Revisions

1. Choose the Substitute option.
2. On Ingredient Substitutes, complete the following fields:
   - Substitute Item
   - Substitute Item Sequence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Substitute Item</td>
<td>Indicates the sequence the substitute items for a component. The system looks for substitute items by this sequence number. For the component being substituted, set this field to zero.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What You Should Know About**

**Identifying substitutions** The system highlights an ingredient’s item description to indicate a substitution.

**Global substitutions** Use ingredient substitution for a specific process. Use item cross references for global substitutions.

▶ **To enter ingredients as percents**

On Enter/Change Process

1. Complete the task to enter a process.
2. Choose the Intermediates option.

3. On Process Resource Revisions, for each ingredient, complete the following field:
   - Fixed/Variable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fixed or Variable Quantity</td>
<td>Indicates if the quantity per assembly for an item on the bill of material varies according to the quantity of the parent item produced or is fixed regardless of the parent quantity. This value also determines if the component quantity is a percent of the parent quantity. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F Fixed Quantity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V Variable Quantity (Default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% Quantities are expressed as a percentage and must total 100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For fixed quantity components, the Work Order and MRP systems do not extend the component's quantity per assembly value by the order quantity.

For Process Manufacturing, the system stores percent components. Therefore, the system treats zero batch sizes like variable quantity components, and treats batch sizes greater than zero like fixed quantity components.

What You Should Know About

**Entering ingredients in a percent process**

You can enter as many ingredients as necessary, but the sum of the percentages must equal 100%. The system uses the batch size to calculate percentages of the process for each ingredient. Verify that each ingredient can convert to the process unit of measure either by item conversion or standard unit of measure conversion. See Defining Default Units of Measure (P41012).

**Entering Production Information**

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process

From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Enter/Change Process

You can enter production and cost information based on demand for a specified feature.
To enter production information

On Process Resource Revisions

1. Access the detail area.

2. Complete the following fields:
   - Issue Type
   - Leadtime Offset
   - Feature Plan Percent
   - Feature Cost Percent
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Issue Type Code       | A code that defines how the system issues each component in the bill of material from stock. In shop floor control, it indicates how the system issues a part to a work order. Valid codes are:  
I Manual issue (default)  
F Floor stock (no issue)  
B Backflush (when part is reported as complete)  
P Preflush (when parts list is generated)  
U Super backflush (at pay-point operation)  
S Sub-contract item (send to supplier)  
Blank Shippable end item  
You can issue a component in more than one way within a specific branch/plant by using a different code on the bill of material and work order parts list. The bill of material code overrides the branch/plant value. |
| Leadtime Offset Days  | Indicates the number of days a part is needed before or after the start date of a manufacturing work order. The system adds the leadtime offset days for the part to the start date of the work order to determine the actual date the part is required. To indicate that a part is needed prior to the work order start date, enter the days as a negative number. To indicate how many days after the work order start date that the part is required, enter a positive number. |
|Feat Plan %            | The percentage of demand for a specified feature based on projected sales. For example, a company might sell 35% of their computers with a standard keyboard and 65% of them with an extended keyboard, based on customer demand.  
The Material Planning system uses this percentage to accurately plan for a feature’s component items. Enter percents as whole numbers: 5% as 5.0. The default value is 100%. |
|Feat Cost %            | A percentage used by the Simulate Cost Rollup program to calculate the cost of a feature or option item as a percentage of the total cost of the parent.  
Enter the percentage as a whole number: 5% as 5.0  

Form-specific information

This value is used in Cost Rollup to calculate what percent of the cost, up to and including the operation, that the co-/by-product comes out of, is apportioned to the co-/by-products at that step.  
The total of all percentages at an operation cannot exceed 100%. The total of all percentages at the last operation must equal 100%. |
Entering Co-/By-Products

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process

From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Enter/Change Process

From the Daily PDM Process menu (G3012), choose Enter/Change Process.

Many process steps create more than one output. You can enter co-products which are usually the main products that companies sell to customers, or by-products, which are produced as a residual item to the process steps.

If you are entering co-/by-products for a batch process, verify that the ratio of the co-/by-products is the same for each batch quantity. For example, if a batch process with a batch quantity of 10 produces 10 each of a co-/by-product, then a batch quantity of 20 must produce 20 each of the co-/by-product.

To enter co-/by-products

1. Choose the Co-/By Products option.

On Process Resource Revisions
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Co or By designator
   - Co/By Product
   - Output Quantity
   - Unit of Measure
   - Co-/By-Product Branch
   - Feature Cost Percent
   - Resource Percent
   - Operation Sequence Number
   - Co-/By-Product Line Number
   - Remarks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Co/By–Product/Intermediates</td>
<td>Distinguishes standard components or ingredients from co–products, by–products and intermediates. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C  Co–products are (concurrent) end items as the result of a process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B  By–products are items that can be produced at any step of a process, but were not planned for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I  Intermediate products are items that are defined as a result of a step but are automatically consumed in the following step. Generally, intermediates are non-stock items and are only defined steps with a pay-point for reporting purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>blank Standard components (Discrete Manufacturing) or ingredients (Process) consumed during the production process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource %</td>
<td>If this option is chosen, this value indicates what percent of the ingredients should be issued separately to co–products and by–products.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

. . . . . . . . . . . Form-specific information . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

This is used to issue ingredients separately to co-/by-products at work order completion, rather than a total issue for each ingredient.

For co-/by-products at the final operation, their resource percent must equal 100 to issue all ingredients.
Entering Intermediates

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process

From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Enter/Change Process

Intermediates allow you to track the quantity of output of any operation in a work center at a specific time. You can set up one intermediate per operation, but you cannot define an intermediate for the last operation.

**To enter intermediates**

On Enter/Change Process

1. Choose the intermediates option.

2. On Intermediate Product Revisions, complete the following fields:
   - Intermediate Product
   - Output Quantity
   - Unit of Measure
   - Effective From
   - Effective Thru
   - Operation Sequence Number
   - Line Type
Processing Options for Enter/Change Process

FIELD DISPLAY:
1. Enter a ‘1’ by the following fields to activate them:
   a. Line/Cell
   b. Routing Type
   c. Batch Quantity

SCREEN DEFAULTS:
Enter the values to preload to the screen at initial inquiry. If left blank, no value will be preloaded.

2. Routing Type

UPDATE OPTIONS:
3. Enter a ‘1’ to update the component operation scrap percent in the Bill of Material for the components on the operation and the Cumulative Yield Percent on the Routing, when updating the operation yield percent

COMPONENT BRANCH:
4. Enter a ‘1’ to change component Branch (Additions Only) to that of the Routing Parent Branch Plant.

Working With Text

You can create text for a process and attach this text to the work order parts list and work order routing. Attached text is indicated by a highlight on the form.

You can locate the text on the following forms within the Shop Floor Control system:

- Work Order Parts List
- Routing Revisions
- Rate Based Hours Entry
- Rate Based Inventory Issues

When you locate the text on any of these forms, the text is unique to the parts list, routing, rate based schedule or inventory. You can change the text and it will not impact the text originally entered on the process.

You can create separate generic text for the different batch processes of a parent item.
Working with text consists of the following:

- Entering text
- Copying text models
- Reviewing user information

**To enter text**

On Enter/Change Process

1. Access the Text option.

On Routing Operation Master Text

2. Type the text and press Enter.

**To revise the text**

On Routing Operation Master Text

1. Press F9 to delete a line.
2. Press F8 to insert a line.
3. Press Enter to save your revisions.

**To copy generic text models**

On Routing Operation Master Text, access Text Model Selection
Select a model.

To review user information

On Routing Operation Master Text, access User Information

See Also

- Attaching Parts List in the Shop Floor Control Guide.
- Attaching the Routing in the Shop Floor Control Guide.
- Creating Rate Schedules in the Shop Floor Control Guide.
- Issuing Materials in the Shop Floor Control Guide.
Updating Component Scrap

From Product Data Management (G30), enter 27

From Advanced Product Data Management (G3031), choose Planned Yield Update

During manufacturing, material loss often occurs during operations. Examples of loss include evaporation or items damaged during move time. You can update the amount of materials and labor hours to account for operation loss by using Planned Yield Update.

For the operations you choose, this program uses the Operational Planned Yield Percent value to update the Cumulative Percent for the bill of material, and the Operation Scrap Percent on the routing. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Operational Planned Yield %</th>
<th>Cumulative Planned Yield %</th>
<th>Operation Scrap %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>(100%/80%) - 100% = 25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>80% x 90% = 72%</td>
<td>(100%/72%) - 100% = 39%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>72% x 100% = 72%</td>
<td>(100%/72%) - 100% = 39%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>72% x 95% = 68%</td>
<td>(100%/68%) - 100% = 25%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Operational Planned Yield Percent**

You enter this value on Enter/Change Routing.

This value represents the planned output yield percent for a step. The system uses this value to adjust the operation scrap percent for the components at that step. This enables the MRP system to use the step scrap percent along with the existing component scrap percent to plan component demand.

**Operation Scrap Percent**

The system updates this value on Enter/Change Routing.

This value represents the expected scrap at each operation. The system calculates this value by compounding the yield percentages from the last operation to the first operation.

The system uses this value to increase or decrease the amount of materials to account for loss within the operation.
Changing Multiple Processes

From Product Data Management (G30), enter 27
From Advanced Product Data Management (G3031), choose Where Used Update

You can change multiple processes, for example to replace an old ingredient with a new one. Use Where Used Update to change the processes and print a report that indicates the changes. You can use this program to perform mass updates such as:

- Replacing one ingredient with another
- Deleting a process item
- Changing effectivity dates for a process item
- Changing the quantity per assembly value for a process item
- Changing the Issue Type Code
- Changing the unit of measure

Use the Data Selection to specify the process items you want to change and define the change with processing options. This program finds all occurrences of the item (as an ingredient) in the Bill of Material table and updates the process. You can also update an ingredient that has past or future effectivity dates.

You can run this program in either proof or final mode. In proof mode, the system generates a report of the proposed changes for your review but doesn’t update the data. In final mode, the system generates a report that lists the changes and updates the data according to your choices.

This program can potentially change many processes in your system at the same time. Therefore, J.D. Edwards recommends that you run it in proof mode first to verify your choices before running it in final mode to change the data. You might want to restrict access to this program.
Before You Begin

☐ Review your process to verify that the item you are updating is active (within the effectivity dates) and appears in at least one process. See Reviewing Processes.

What You Should Know About

Changing and deleting  If you want to make changes to a process and remove the old records, run the program twice. First, create the new records and then delete the old ones.

Change limitations  These changes are stored in the Bill of Material table only. Existing parts lists, MRP calculations, and costing information is not automatically updated.

The program updates the following fields:

- Low Level Code in the Item Master table
- Net Change Flag in the Item Balance table.
Processing Options for Where Used Update

OPERATION OPTIONS:
1. Enter a ’1’ if this is to be run in Final Mode. If left blank the program will run in Proof Mode.

2. Enter a ’1’ to DELETE the existing record(s) from the BOM file. No updating will be performed when delete is selected. If left blank no records will be deleted.

3. Enter a ’1’ to validate the new component against the Item Branch File (F4102). If left blank the new item will not be validated.

REPLACEMENT VALUES:
4. Enter the new Component Item number. If left blank, no change will be made to the component item number.

5. Enter the new Quantity Per amount. If left blank, no change will be made to the quantity per amount.

6. Enter the new Effective from date. If left blank, today’s date will be used.

7. Enter the new Effective Thru date. If left blank, no change will be made to the effective thru date.

8. Enter the new Quantity Per Unit of Measure. If left blank, no change will be made to the new Quantity Per unit of measure.

9. Enter the new Issue Type Code. If left blank, no change will occur.

BILL OF MATERIAL SELECTION:
10. Enter the Branch/Plant location to select for BOM changes. (Required) If left blank, no processing will be performed.
Where Used Update Report

This report indicates that for item 212 the quantity per assembly was changed from 2 to 10, and the issue type code changed from I to B, effective on 12/14/98.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Item</th>
<th>Parent Description</th>
<th>Component Item</th>
<th>Component Description</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>Qty. Per</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Thru</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>333</td>
<td>OAK SHELF UNIT</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>OAK SHELF SIDES</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>09/13/93</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Updated to:</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12/14/98</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verifying Processes

From Product Data Management (G30), enter 27

From Advanced Product Data Management (G3031), choose Integrity Analysis

To check your processes for low level codes and product structure errors (where a process item is listed as an ingredient of itself), use the Integrity Analysis program.

This program generates a report that identifies any processes you need to correct. If the report indicates errors, you should correct the processes and run the Integrity Analysis program again. When the program does not find errors in the processes, it updates the low level codes in both the Item Master and the Branch/Plant tables.

J.D. Edwards recommends that you run the Integrity Analysis program immediately after a data conversion, such as system startup, and then on a periodic basis, such as two or four times a year. You should also run the Integrity Analysis program before running the Simulated Cost Rollup or DRP/MPS/MRP Generation programs.
What You Should Know About

Verifying processes online

There is an alternate procedure to running the Integrity Analysis. You can activate online validation so that system validates process items as you enter them. In this procedure, the system does not allow you to enter recursive ingredients. An error message is displayed and you will not be able to enter a parent process item as an ingredient of itself.

See Also

• Setting Up Manufacturing Constants (P3009)

Integrity Analysis Report With Errors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Item</th>
<th>Parent Description</th>
<th>Parent Branch</th>
<th>Component Item</th>
<th>Component Description</th>
<th>Comp Branch</th>
<th>Seq</th>
<th>Error Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00007270</td>
<td>was not found in the Item Master file (F4101)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Structure Analysis Completed with Errors - Correct Errors and Submit Again.

** Caution ** Low Level Codes have not been adjusted. Report must be rerun!!

Integrity Analysis Report Without Errors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Item</th>
<th>Parent Description</th>
<th>Parent Branch</th>
<th>Component Item</th>
<th>Component Description</th>
<th>Comp Branch</th>
<th>Seq</th>
<th>Error Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Product Structure Contains NO Errors.

All Low Level Codes have been adjusted.

Exercises

See the exercises for this chapter.
Review Processes

Reviewing Processes

You can review processes to:

- Plan and research ECOs
- Perform “what if” scenarios such as “If I change the ingredient, what processes are affected?”
- Evaluate capacity, manpower, and resources
- Evaluate equipment needs
- View the results of a pending product change
- Determine the effect of an item shortage

Complete the following tasks:

- Locating processes
- Comparing Ingredients
- Printing process information

What You Should Know About

**Ingredient usability**

Ingredient usability is a format you can set with processing options for the review programs. When you locate an ingredient, the forms display processes that use the ingredient, as well as the producible quantity of each. You can also enter an ingredient quantity and the system displays the amount of process item that can be produced using that ingredient quantity. The ingredient usability format also allows you to create a work order or view the item availability for the selected process item and quantity.

**Viewing batch bills**

When you have defined several batch processes for a item, the system displays them by batch size in a separate window. You must choose one to work with.
Generating reports

J.D. Edwards recommends that you do not change the data item sequence for the reports.

Quantity per mode

The system displays the ingredients required for the process item requirements, but does not extend the calculations to the ingredients. The process item in this example would require 2 Ingredient X, 1 Ingredient Y, and 2 Ingredient Z, calculated by totaling each level of ingredients separately.

Extended quantity mode

The system factors the relationship between the levels of ingredients into the totals. It explodes the ingredient requirements down to the lowest level. Since each Ingredient X requires 2 of Ingredient Z, the process item would require 4 Ingredient Z.

Bill Comparison

When comparing bills of material, components are summarized by work center or item. This is done at a single level or multiple levels.

Locating Processes

Locating processes consists of the following tasks:

- Locating ingredients
- Locating where an ingredient is used
- Locating a co-/by-product
- Locating where a co-/by-product is produced
- Locating resources
- Locating process instructions

To locate ingredients

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process

From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Ingredients Inquiry

On Ingredients Inquiry
Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Process/Item
- Mode
- Requested Quantity
- As of
- Skip to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Mode  | Indicates the display mode for the bill of material.  
- 1 Single Level Bill of Material. Shows level one (direct) components only.  
- 2 Multi-Level Bill of Material. Shows all levels of components, with proximity to the parent item indicated by level 1, 2, 3, and so forth.  
- 3 Indented Bill of Material. The multi-level bill of material with each level indented for differentiation.  
You can also set this value in the processing options. |
| As of | An X in this field will display the remark, time and return date for the address number entered above. |
Processing Options for Ingredients Inquiry

DEFAULT INFORMATION:
1. Type of Inquiry
   Select one of the following: ____________________________
   1 = Single Level Bill of Material
   2 = Multi-Level Bill of Material
   3 = Indented Bill of Material
   4 = All Processes where a co- or by-product is produced
   (If left blank, Single Level Bill of Material will default.)

2. Enter the default Bill Type: ____________________________

VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:
Enter the DREAM Writer versions to execute of the following programs. If left blank, ‘ZJDE0001’ will be used.
NOTE: Processing options 2a – 2b are ONLY used to set printer overrides. No Data Selection or Sequencing is possible.
2a. Single Level BOM Print (P30410) ____________________________
2b. -or- Multi-Level BOM Print (P30415) ____________________________
3. ECO Workbench (P30225) ____________________________

ECO HEADER VERSION:
4. Enter the version of the ECO Header to call from the Revisions Window (P30BREV). If left blank version ZJDE0001 will be used.
   ____________________________

COMPONENT SEQUENCING:
5. Enter a  ____________________________
   ‘1’ to sequence components by component line number
   ‘2’ to sequence components by operation sequence number
   (If left blank, components will be sequenced by component line number)

To locate where an ingredient is used

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process
From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Ingredients Where Used
On Ingredients Where Used
1. Complete the following required fields:
   - Ingredient Branch
   - Ingredient
2. Complete the following optional fields:
   - As of
   - Bill Type
   - Process Quantity
   - Grade
   - Potency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Bill Type | A user defined code (system 40, type TB), that designates the type of bill of material. You can define different types of bills of material for different uses. For example:  
   - M (Default) Standard manufacturing bill  
   - RWK Rework bill  
   - SPR Spare parts bill  
   The system enters bill type M in the work order header when you create a work order, unless you specify another bill type. The system reads the bill type code on the work order header to know which bill of material to use to create the work order parts list. MRP uses the bill type code to identify the bill of material to use when it attaches MRP messages. Batch bills of material must be type M for shop floor control, product costing, and MRP processing. |
Processing Options for Ingredients Where Used

VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:
1. Enter the version of Item Search (P41200) to execute. If left blank, version ‘ZJDE0001’ will be used.

2. Enter the version of Material Where Used Print (P30420) to execute. If left blank, version ‘ZJDE0001’ will be used.

TYPE OF INQUIRY DEFAULT:
3. Select one of the following:
   1 = Single Level Where Used
   2 = Multi-Level Where Used
   3 = Indented Where Used
   4 = All Co-/By-Products for a Process
   5 = Part/Ingredient Useability
   (If left blank, Single Level Where Used will default.)

PART USEABILITY OPTIONS:
Enter the version to be used for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0001 is used.
4. Work Order Entry (P48013)
5. Item Availability (P30205)

SCREEN DEFAULTS:
6. Enter the default Bill Type to be used. If left blank, ‘*’ will be used for all Bill Types.

To locate a co-/by-product

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process
From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Co-/By-Products Inquiry
On Co-/By-Products Inquiry
Complete the following required fields:

- Process Branch/Plant
- Process
Processing Options for Co-/By-Product Inquiry

VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:
1. Enter the version of Item Search (P41200) to execute. If left blank, version ‘ZJDE0001’ will be used.
2. Enter the version of Material Where Used Print (P30420) to execute. If left blank, version ‘ZJDE0001’ will be used.

TYPE OF INQUIRY DEFAULT:
3. Select one of the following:
   1 = Single Level Where Used
   2 = Multi-Level Where Used
   3 = Indented Where Used
   4 = All Co-/By-Products for a Process
   5 = Part/Ingredient Useability
   (If left blank, Single Level Where Used will default.)

PART USEABILITY OPTIONS:
Enter the version to be used for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0001 is used.
4. Work Order Entry (P48013)
5. Item Availability (P30205)

SCREEN DEFAULTS:
6. Enter the default Bill Type to be used. If left blank, ‘*’ will be used for all Bill Types.

To locate where a co-/by-product is produced

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process
From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Where Produced Inquiry
On Where Produced Inquiry
Complete the following required fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Co/By Product
Processing Options for Where Produced Inquiry

DEFAULT INFORMATION:
1. Type of Inquiry
   Select one of the following: ____________
   1 = Single Level Bill of Material
   2 = Multi-Level Bill of Material
   3 = Indented Bill of Material
   4 = All Processes where a co- or by-product is produced
   (If left blank, Single Level Bill of Material will default.)

2. Enter the default Bill Type: ____________

VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:
Enter the DREAM Writer versions to execute of the following programs. If left blank, ‘ZJDE0001’ will be used.
NOTE: Processing options 2a - 2b are ONLY used to set printer overrides. No Data Selection or Sequencing is possible.
2a. Single Level BOM Print (P30410) ____________
2b. -or- Multi-Level BOM Print(P30415) ____________
3. ECO Workbench (P30225) ____________

ECO HEADER VERSION:
4. Enter the version of the ECO Header to call from the Revisions Window (P30BREV). If left blank version ZJDE0001 will be used.

COMPONENT SEQUENCING:
5. Enter a ____________
   ‘1’ to sequence components by component line number
   ‘2’ to sequence components by operation sequence number
   (If left blank, components will be sequenced by component line number)

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process

From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Resources Inquiry

To locate resources

On Resources Inquiry
Complete the following required fields:

- Business Unit
- Process

To locate process instructions

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process

From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Instructions Inquiry

On Instructions Inquiry
Complete the following required fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Process/Item

The following fields display leadtime information:

- Machine Hours
- Labor Hours
- Setup Hours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Machine Run Hours</td>
<td>This is the standard machine hours expected to be incurred in the normal production of this item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labor Run Hours</td>
<td>This is the standard hours of labor expected in the normal production of this item. The run labor hours in the Routing Master table (F3003) are the total hours it takes the specified crew size to complete the operation. The hours are multiplied by the crew size during shop floor release and product costing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Setup</td>
<td>The standard setup hours you expect to incur in the normal completion of this item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Comparing Processes

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Process

From Daily PDM Process (G3012), choose Ingredient Comparison

Use Ingredient Comparison to compare the ingredients in two processes. The program displays all the ingredients of both processes or only those components different between the two.

To compare processes

On Ingredient Comparison

Complete the following fields:

- All/Different
- Mode
- Process 1
- Process 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All/Diff</td>
<td>Display All records or those that have Differences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Indicates the display mode for the bill of material comparison.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 – Single Level Bill of Material comparison (direct components only).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 – Multi-Level Bill of Material comparison (All levels of components).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can also set this value in processing option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item Number</td>
<td>A number that the system assigns to an item. It can be in short, long, or 3rd item number format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Processing Options for Ingredient Comparison**

SCREEN DEFAULT INFORMATION:
1. Enter bill type. If left blank, ‘M’ will default.  
2. Enter one of the following:  
   1 – Single-level comparison  
   2 – Multi-level comparison  
   If left blank, ‘1’ will default.

TYPE OF COMPARISON:
3. Enter one of the following:  
   1 – Summary by work center  
   2 – Summary by item  
   If left blank, ‘1’ will default.

COMPONENT SELECTION:
4. Enter ‘1’ to exclude subassemblies.  
5. Enter ‘1’ to include phantoms.
Printing Process Information

There are several reports you can generate to review bill of material information.

You can print process information in single, multi, and multi-level indented formats. Specify a process and print the ingredients for that process. If there is more than one process (in the case of different batch sizes), the program prints each process separately.

These reports include:

- Single Level Ingredient Report
- Multi-Level Ingredient Report
- Where Used Ingredient Report
- Ingredient Comparison Report
- Process Information
- Process Instructions
### Single Level Ingredient Report

**From Product Data Management (G30), choose Periodic PDM Process**

**From Periodic PDM Process (G3022), choose Single Level Ingredient**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process Ingredient</th>
<th>Process Description</th>
<th>Ingredient Description</th>
<th>Branch/Plant</th>
<th>Quantity Per</th>
<th>UM</th>
<th>From Date</th>
<th>Through Date</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Seq No R</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Ty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>845</td>
<td>Potatoes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB Type M</td>
<td>Rev</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>845</td>
<td>Potatoes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB Type M</td>
<td>Rev</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>745</td>
<td>Potatoes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB Type M</td>
<td>Rev</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>222</td>
<td>Hash Brown Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ Type M</td>
<td>Rev</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>02/20/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ M</td>
<td>02/20/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Chip Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB Type M</td>
<td>Rev</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ M</td>
<td>02/20/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522</td>
<td>Frying Oil</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Potato Chip Seasoning</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>938</td>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>CI P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>80.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>888</td>
<td>Peel Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB Type M</td>
<td>Rev</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>02/20/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8451</td>
<td>Food Grade Potato</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB M</td>
<td>02/20/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Ethanol Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>GA Type M</td>
<td>Rev</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8452</td>
<td>Non-Food Grade Potato</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5215</td>
<td>Waste Water</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ M</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2468</td>
<td>Yeast</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246</td>
<td>Enzymes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>809</td>
<td>Contaminant</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>80.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Processing Options for Single Level Ingredient Report

**BILL EFFECTIVITY:**

1. Enter the “As of” date for the Bill of Material. If left blank, the current date will be used.

**FORMAT OPTIONS:**

2. Enter a ’1’ to print a second line of detail for items appearing on the report. If left blank, only one line of detail will be printed.
### Multi-Level Ingredient Report

**From** Product Data Management (G30), choose Periodic PDM Process

**From** Periodic PDM Process (G3022), choose Multi Level Ingredient

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process Ingredient</th>
<th>Process Description</th>
<th>Branch/Plant</th>
<th>Batch Quantity</th>
<th>UM T</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Thru</th>
<th>Level Seq No</th>
<th>R  F Ty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>845</td>
<td>Potatoes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB Type M Rev</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>745</td>
<td>Potatoes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>1 LB P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>845</td>
<td>Potatoes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>5000 LB Type M</td>
<td>Rev</td>
<td>Drawing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>745</td>
<td>Potatoes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>1 LB P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>222</td>
<td>Hash Brown Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>OZ Type M Rev</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>02/20/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>3 OZ M</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Chip Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB Type M Rev</td>
<td>16 OZ M</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>1 OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522</td>
<td>Frying Oil</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>30 OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Potato Chip Seasoning</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>1 OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>938</td>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>300 CI P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>85.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>888</td>
<td>Peel Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB Type M Rev</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>02/20/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8451</td>
<td>Food Grade Potato</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>LB M</td>
<td>02/20/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Ethanol Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>GA Type M Rev</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>02/22/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1234</td>
<td>Waste Water</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>32 OZ M</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5215</td>
<td>Yeast</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>4 OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246</td>
<td>Enzymes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>6 OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>809</td>
<td>Contaminant</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>4 OZ P</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>80.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8455</td>
<td>Peclings</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>16 OZ M</td>
<td>02/22/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Processing Options for Multi-Level Ingredient Report

**BILL EFFECTIVITY:**

1. Enter the “as of” date for the bill of material. If left blank, the current date will be used.

**FORMAT OPTIONS:**

2. Enter a ‘1’ to print an indented bill of material.

3. Enter a ‘1’ to print a second line of detail for items appearing on the report. If left blank, only one line of detail will be printed.

**COMPONENT LOCATOR:**

4. Enter a ‘1’ to print the component locations.
### Ingredient Where Used Report

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Periodic PDM Process

From Periodic PDM Process (G3022), choose Where Used Ingredient

The Where Used Ingredient report shows all processes that use a specific ingredient.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient Process</th>
<th>Ingredient Description</th>
<th>Process Description</th>
<th>Plant</th>
<th>Drawing Number</th>
<th>Quantity Per UM</th>
<th>UM T</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Thru</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Seq No</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Ty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>3 02 R 02/20/95 12/31/10</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>222</td>
<td>Hash Brown Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Type M</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>3 02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2221</td>
<td>Hash Brown Potatoes</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Grade</td>
<td>Potency</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Chip Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>16 02 R 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5215</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>Grade</td>
<td>Potency</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5215</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Ethanol Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Ethanol</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2381</td>
<td>Potato solids</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>1 GA Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Chip Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>16 02 R 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Chips</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>14 02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>16 02 R 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Chip Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>50 02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>16 02 R 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>14 02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Chip Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>16 02 R 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>777</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>14 02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>Leadtime Lvl</td>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>16 02 R 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5225</td>
<td>Used Frying Oil</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>02 M</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8452</td>
<td>Non-Food Grade Potato</td>
<td>Ethanol Process</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td>3 02 R 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>02 Offset</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>ME Rev</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Processing Options for Where Used Ingredient

**FORMAT OPTION:**
1. Select the Mode or Style of report to be created.
   1 = Single Level
   2 = Multi-Level
   3 = Multi-Level Indented

2. Enter a '1' to print a second line of detail on the report. If left blank, only one line of detail will be printed.

### Ingredient Comparison Report

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Periodic PDM Process

From Periodic PDM Process (G3022), choose Ingredient Comparison

Use the Ingredient Comparison report to compare two bills of material. The report prints all the components of both bills of material or only those components different between the two.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Work Center</th>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity Per</th>
<th>UM T Quantity Per</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>522</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>Frying Oil</td>
<td>30 OZ P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522</td>
<td>938</td>
<td>Potato Chip Seasoning</td>
<td>1 OZ P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522</td>
<td>8455</td>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>300 CI P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>Peels</td>
<td>16 OZ M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522</td>
<td>2468</td>
<td>Yeast</td>
<td>6 OZ P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5215</td>
<td>5215</td>
<td>Waste Water</td>
<td>4 OZ P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8459</td>
<td>8459</td>
<td>Potato Slices</td>
<td>16 OZ M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8452</td>
<td>8452</td>
<td>Non-Food Grade Potato</td>
<td>3 LB M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>809</td>
<td>809</td>
<td>Contaminant</td>
<td>4 OZ P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for Ingredient Comparison Report

ITEM/PROCESS #1:
1. Item Number (Required) ____________
2. Branch/Plant (Required) ____________
3. Batch Quantity (Default = Zero) ____________
4. Unit of Measure (Default = Production) ____________
5. As of Date (Default = today) ____________
6. Bill Type (Default = ‘M’) ____________

ITEM/PROCESS #2:
7. Item Number (Required) ____________
8. Branch/Plant (Required) ____________
9. Batch Quantity (Default = Zero) ____________
10. Unit of Measure (Default = Production) ____________
11. As of Date (Default = today) ____________
12. Bill Type (Default = ‘M’) ____________

TYPE OF COMPARISON:
13. Enter one of the following: ____________
   1 - Single-level comparison
   2 - Multi-level comparison
   If left blank, ‘1’ will default.
14. Enter one of the following: ____________
   1 - Item summary by work center
   2 - Regardless of work center
   If left blank, ‘1’ will default.

COMPONENT PRINT SELECTION:
15. Enter a ‘1’ to exclude subassemblies from the report.
16. Enter a ‘1’ to include phantoms.
17. Enter an ‘A’ to print all items.
   Leave blank to print only items that differ in quantity or inclusion.
## Process Report

*From Product Data Management (G30), choose Periodic PDM Process*

*From Periodic PDM Process (G3022), choose Process Report*

### Potato Chip Process

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item Number</th>
<th>Work Center</th>
<th>Seq #</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Yield</th>
<th>Plan Run Hours</th>
<th>Setup % Ovlp Hours</th>
<th>Move Crew Hours</th>
<th>Instruct Cd B</th>
<th>From Thru</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200-4007</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10.00 Starch wash potatoe</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.50</td>
<td>.04</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4008</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20.00 Drain water</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.50</td>
<td>.04</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4009</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30.00 Add water, soak</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.50</td>
<td>.04</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4010</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40.00 Drain water</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4015</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50.00 Deep Fry</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>.04</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4016</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>60.00 Add seasoning</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4017</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>70.00 Package</td>
<td>95.00</td>
<td>.04</td>
<td>.04</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4018</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80.00 Add preservatives</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ethanol Process

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item Number</th>
<th>Work Center</th>
<th>Seq #</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Yield</th>
<th>Plan Run Hours</th>
<th>Setup % Ovlp Hours</th>
<th>Move Crew Hours</th>
<th>Instruct Cd B</th>
<th>From Thru</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200-4004</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10.00 Grate potatoes with</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.08</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4008</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20.00 Add liquids from ot</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4011</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30.00 Transfer liquid to</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.20</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4013</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40.00 Add yeast killer</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4016</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50.00 Transfer to ferment</td>
<td>96.00</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4017</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>60.00 Separate solids fro</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>.05</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4018</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>70.00 Distillation of liq</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.04</td>
<td>.04</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4019</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80.00 Add contaminants</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200-4020</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>90.00 Move to bulk storag</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>3 02/21/95</td>
<td>12/3 1/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Instructions Report

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Periodic PDM Process

From Periodic PDM Process (G3022), choose Instructions Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process</th>
<th>Batch Quantity</th>
<th>Branch/Plant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>GA</td>
<td>M40 Typ M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ethanol Process

**Oper Seq#** | **Work Center** | **Description** | **Machine** | **Labor** | **Hours** | **B Yield** | **Op From** | **Thru** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>200–4004</td>
<td>Grate potatoes with water</td>
<td>.08</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ingredient** | **Description** | **Quantity Per** | **UM** | **T Line** | **Branch** | **From** | **Thru** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8452</td>
<td>Non-Food Grade Potato</td>
<td>3 LB M 1.0</td>
<td>M40 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8455</td>
<td>Peels</td>
<td>16 OZ M 6.0</td>
<td>M40 02/22/95 12/31/10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Oper Seq#** | **Work Center** | **Description** | **Machine** | **Labor** | **Hours** | **B Yield** | **Op From** | **Thru** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>200–4004</td>
<td>Add liquids from other process</td>
<td>.10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ingredient** | **Description** | **Quantity Per** | **UM** | **T Line** | **Branch** | **From** | **Thru** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5215</td>
<td>Waste Water</td>
<td>32 OZ M 2.0</td>
<td>M40 02/21/95 12/31/10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Oper Seq#** | **Work Center** | **Description** | **Machine** | **Labor** | **Hours** | **B Yield** | **Op From** | **Thru** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>200–4011</td>
<td>Transfer liquid to vats</td>
<td>.20</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Oper Seq#** | **Work Center** | **Description** | **Machine** | **Labor** | **Hours** | **B Yield** | **Op From** | **Thru** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>200–4011</td>
<td>Add yeast killer</td>
<td>.01</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>100.00</td>
<td>02/21/95</td>
<td>12/31/10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Intermediate Output Qty** | **Effective** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>02/22/95 – 12/31/10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Exercises**

See the exercises for this chapter.
Work With Leadtimes

Working With Leadtimes

Determining leadtime is an essential part of any manufacturing or scheduling process. For any product that you purchase or manufacture, you encounter a time lag between when you order an item or start production and when you receive the item or finish production. To account for the lag, you must estimate the extra time and allow for it in your planning.

Working with leadtimes consists of the following:

- Reviewing leadtimes
- Generating leadtimes

The system stores leadtime information in the Bill of Material table.

What You Should Know About

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actual leadtime</th>
<th>Actual leadtimes display the leadtimes as updated in the Branch/Plant table by the Leadtime Rollup program.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calculated leadtime</td>
<td>Calculated leadtimes display how many days you must start to manufacture a part prior to the need date of the parent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

- Appendix C – Leadtime Calculations
- Appendix C – Leadtimes in the Shop Floor Control Guide

Reviewing Leadtimes

From Daily Product Data Management (G30), choose Daily PDM Discrete

From Daily PDM Discrete (G3011), choose Leadtime Inquiry
You can review leadtimes to compare both actual and calculated leadtimes for an item.

To review leadtimes

On Leadtime Inquiry

1. Complete the following required fields:
   - Parent Item
   - Branch/Plant
2. Complete the following optional field:
   - Mode
   - As Of
3. Select a view from the View menu.
   The following fields display leadtime information:
   - Level
   - Manufacturing
   - Cumulative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2-90
What You Should Know About

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Level       | A value that represents the leadtime for an item at its assigned level in the production process, as defined on Plant Manufacturing Data. The system uses this value to calculate the start dates for work orders using fixed leadtimes. Level leadtime is different for purchased and manufactured items:  
You can enter level leadtime manually on Manufacturing Values Entry, or you can use the Leadtime Rollup program calculate it. To calculate level leadtime using the Leadtime Rollup program, you must first enter a quantity in the Manufacturing Leadtime Quantity field in the Item Branch table (F4102). |
| Manufacturing | The total number of days required to build an item from its lowest level components to the final assembly. This value is the total of the level leadtimes for all manufactured items, plus the highest manufacturing leadtime for all its components.  
If all components are purchased, the manufacturing leadtime equals the item's level leadtime. Purchased item leadtimes are not included in the calculation of manufacturing leadtimes.  
You can enter the manufacturing leadtime manually or you can have the system calculate it when you run the Leadtime Rollup program. |
| Cumulative  | The total number of days required to build an item from its lowest level components to the final assembly. The system calculates the value differently for manufactured and purchased items.  
Manufactured – The total of all level leadtimes for all manufactured items, plus the highest cumulative leadtime of all its components.  
Purchased – The item's level leadtime. Purchased item leadtimes are included in the calculation of cumulative leadtimes.  
You can enter this value manually or you can have the system calculate it when you run the Leadtime Rollup program. |
| Critical paths | If a component's cumulative leadtime is greater than or equal to the parent item's leadtime, the system highlights the Cumulative Leadtime field. |
Processing Options for Leadtime Inquiry

LEADTIME PREFERENCE:
1. Enter a '1' to use the leadtime values from the Item Branch File (F4102) or leave blank to display calculated leadtimes.

Generating Leadtimes

You must generate leadtimes for the Material Requirements Planning and Capacity Requirements Planning systems. The Leadtime Rollup program calculates planned level leadtimes for manufactured items and updates them on Manufacturing Data in the Branch/Plant table. This program calculates:

- Queue and setup hours
- Leadtime per unit
- Level, manufactured, and cumulative leadtimes for selected items

You cannot run this program in proof mode. It updates the records according to the data selection and processing options you choose. Plan your data selection carefully, because changes to leadtimes will affect the Materials Requirements Planning and Capacity Requirements Planning systems. You can update new items by entering them separately in the data selection.

Processing Options for Leadtime Calculation

1. Enter the Plant to be processed or an '*' for all Plants.

2. Enter date for routing effectivity:
   Blanks will default to today’s date.
Test Yourself: Generating Leadtimes

Match each inquiry form on the left with its description on the right:

1. Operations by Work Center  
   A. Displays the unique routing for an item, including the operations and hours required to manufacture it

2. Leadtime Inquiry  
   B. Display the level and accumulated leadtimes required to produce a parent item and its components

3. Routing Inquiry  
   C. Displays all items that are routed through a selected work center.

1. True or False

   Cumulative leadtime is the total number of days required to build an item from its lowest level components to the final assembly.

2. True or False

   Manufacturing leadtime is the total number of days required to build an item from its purchased parts to the final assembly.

3. True or False

   Overlapping operations can help reduce the manufacturing leadtime.

The answers are in Appendix B.
Engineering Change Management
Engineering Change Management

Objectives

- To learn how to create and maintain engineering change orders (ECOs)
- To understand the notification process
- To understand the approval process

About Engineering Change Management

Manufacturers must respond quickly with engineering changes in order to maintain and increase market share. Engineering changes might be necessary to respond to market demand, governmental requirements, safety issues, service requirements, or functional and competitive reasons.

Use the Engineering Change Management system to create, plan, review, approve, and implement ECOs.

Engineering change management consists of the following tasks:

- Setting up engineering change orders
- Working with engineering change orders
- Reviewing engineering change orders
- Approving engineering change orders
What Is an ECO (Engineering Change Order)?

ECOs are numbered documents that you use to track product changes within the Engineering Change Management system. After you have tested and approved an ECO, you can implement it and modify your standard product or process.

Product or process changes can impact many areas within your company, including:

- Customer service
- Tooling
- Standards
- Suppliers
- Master production schedule
- Product cost
- Service parts
- Inventory
- Plant layout

Features

ECOs enable you to:

**Define who approves the ECO**

- Establish levels of approval, so that each member of the first review group must approve the ECO before the next group receives notification
- Locate the status of an ECO and review who has approved it and who has yet to approve it
- Use electronic mail to notify and approve ECOs
- Create and maintain bill of material data that is associated with the change
- Notify reviewers during the approval process
- Limit access to the approval records

**Define which items to change**

- Describe the change
- Define the parts and processes that are necessary to implement the ECO
- Include multiple parent item/process or component/ingredient relationships on the same change order
Define the change routing

- Itemize the steps required to make the change

Define additional detail

- Enter supporting data, such as costs, dates, reasons, status, affected work and purchase orders, approval history, and implementation steps into a centralized database
- Identify the originator and reason for the change
- Set up user defined codes to define reason, status, and disposition of the change order
- Attach supplemental information

System Integration

ECOs integrate with the following systems:

Shop Floor Control

Uses the revision level maintained by ECOs to retrieve the appropriate bill of material for a work order.

You can create a work order from a prior ECO revision level.

Inventory Management

Updates the Item Master revision level.

Product Data Management

Uses the Engineering Change Population program to update bills of material.

ERPx

Activates flash messaging in Material Requirements Planning, Purchase Order Management and Inventory Management to warn of a pending ECO. The Master Production Scheduling system uses the effectiveness dates established by ECOs to plan and introduce products.

Who Is Involved in the ECO Process?

The ECO process includes the following personnel:

1. The administrator sets up the ECO by:
   - Setting up the approval routing master
   - Reviewing and modifying the ECO codes
   - Setting up next numbers
2. The coordinator creates the ECO by:
   - Verifying that no prior ECO exists for this change
   - Entering the ECO
   - Defining the change with a list of affected parent and component items
   - Establishing the new routing operations to implement the ECO
   - Maintaining supplemental details
   - Running the notification program

3. The reviewer approves the ECO by:
   - Reviewing the ECO after system notification.
   - Running reports with information for an individual ECO or a list of open ECOs
   - Indicating approval or rejection
   - Periodically checking for outstanding ECOs

4. The coordinator implements the ECO by:
   - Running the Engineering Change Population (P30510) program

The following graphic illustrates the ECO process.
What Kinds of Changes Can I Define?

You can define the engineering change order by determining the type of change to make and identifying parent and component items.

For example, you can determine whether to:

- Add a new part
- Change an existing part
- Swap an old part with a new part
- Remove an existing item

The values you enter in the Change Type and Parent/Child Relationship fields define these changes and determine how the Engineering Change Population program updates the bill of material for the item.

You can use the following values:

| Change Type  |  |  |
|--------------|  |  |
| N            | add new part  |
| C            | change existing part  |
| S            | swap old part with new part  |
| R            | remove existing part  |

Parent/Child Relationship

|  |  |  |
| P | parent item  |
| C | component item  |

These fields allow eight possible combinations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ECO Parts List form</th>
<th>Related Items form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Change Type</td>
<td>P/C Rel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add a new bill</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change the bill</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swap a parent item</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove a bill</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add a new component</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change a component</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swap a component</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove a component</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**About ECO Revision Levels**

A revision level is an alphanumeric character that represents the number of times an item has been changed. This usually indicates a permanent change to an item’s form, fit, or function. For efficient tracking of changes with revision levels, the revision levels for an item’s bill of material and routing should match. You can use an ECO to update an item’s revision level and a drawing’s revision level.

Use ECOs to manage the following revision level information:

- Set up the next revision levels (30/NR) for ECOs
- Load parent revision levels for component being added or modified
- Locate the revision levels of an ECO
- Assign ECO revision levels automatically
- Maintain drawing revision levels for each item changed by an ECO, and update the drawing revision in either the Bill of Material or Item Master tables.
Tables

The Engineering Change Management system uses the following tables:

**F4801** The ECO Work Order Master table stores the ECOs and the manufacturing work orders.

**F3002** The Bill of Material Master table defines and maintains branch/plant information about bills of material, such as quantities of components, features and options, effectivity dates, grade/potency and lot constants, and levels of detail.

**F48092** The ECO Supplemental table stores additional information about ECOs, such as implementation costs.

**F3013** The ECO Parts List table contains the list of parts that are affected by the ECO.

**F4808** The ECO Approval Routing Master table contains the address book numbers of the people who are responsible for approving ECOs and determines the order in which they should be notified.

**F4818** The ECO Approval Audit table contains the approval history of an ECO.

**F0101** The Address Book table is the central repository for all address information pertaining to customers, vendors, employees, prospects, and so forth.

**F0006** The Business Unit Master table identifies branch, plant, warehouse, and business unit information, such as company, description (name), and category codes assigned to that entity.

**F3112** The Routing Revisions table contains the routing steps for implementing the ECO.

**F4102** The Branch/Plant Master table contains the ECO number, date, reason, and item revision level information for the branch/plant.

**F3003** The Routing Master table contains master routing for your items.

Before You Begin

- Define your items in the Inventory Management system. See Entering Item Master Information.

- Define your work centers. See Entering Work Centers.
Set Up Engineering Change Orders

Setting Up Engineering Change Orders

Before you use the Engineering Change Management system, you need to set up various codes and the approval routing master.

Complete the following tasks:

- Set up engineering order codes
- Set up next numbers for engineering change orders
- Set up approval routings

Setting Up Engineering Change Order Codes

Define ECO codes for information that is unique to your branch/plant:

- **Revision levels**: Revision levels indicate the number of times an item has changed.
- **Type codes**: Type codes indicate the classification of an ECO, such as G for government or R for rework.
- **Priority codes**: Priority codes indicate the priority of an ECO, such as H for high priority and 3 for normal priority.
- **Status codes**: Status codes, such as 90 through 99, indicate the date completed on the order. Examples include EM for emergency and A for approved.
- **Phase in codes**: Phase in codes indicate how an ECO is to be implemented.
**Existing disposition codes**

Existing disposition codes indicate what to do with an existing item that is affected by the ECO. Examples of existing disposition codes are UAI for use as is and SCP for scrap.

**Reason codes**

Reason codes indicate why you create an ECO. Examples of ECO reason codes include CC for Customer Change Request and FR for Federal Requirement.

Complete the following tasks:

- Set up revision levels
- Set up type codes
- Set up priority codes
- Set up status codes
- Set up phase in codes
- Set up existing disposition codes
- Set up reason codes

### To set up revision levels

From Product Data Management (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose ECO Next Revision Levels

On ECO Next Revision Levels
Complete the following fields:

- Character Code
- Description

**To set up type codes**

You can set up user defined codes (table 00/TY) to define types of ECOs such as G for government or R for rework.

On Type Code
Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description
- Description 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User Defined Codes</td>
<td>Identifies the table that contains user defined codes. The table is also referred to as a code type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A user defined name or remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description-2</td>
<td>A user defined name or remark.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To set up priority codes

From Product Data Management (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Priority Code

You can set up user defined codes (table 00/PR) to define priorities of ECOs such as H for high priority or 3 for normal priority.

On Priority Code
Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description

To set up status codes

From Product Data Management (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Status Code

You can set up user defined codes (table 00/SS) to define the status of ECOs such as EM for emergency and A for approved.

On Status Code
Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description

**To set up phase in codes**

From Product Data Management (G 30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G 3041), choose Phase In Code

You can set up user defined codes (table 00/PH) to define how to phase in ECOs such as IMD for immediate and AVL for as available.

On Phase In Code
Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description

**To set up existing disposition codes**

From Product Data Management (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G3041), choose Existing Disposition Codes

On Existing Disposition Code
Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description

You can set up user defined codes (table 00/ED) to define what to do with existing items that are affected by the ECO, such as CNL for cancel and RWK for rework.

To set up reason codes

From Product Data Management (G 30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G 3041), choose Reason Codes

You can set up user defined codes (table 40/CR) reasons for defining ECOs such as CC for customer change and FR for federal requirements.
On Reason Code

Complete the following fields:

- Code
- Description

**Setting Up Next Numbers for Engineering Change Orders**

From Product Data Management (G30), enter 29

From Product Data Management Setup (G 3041), choose Next Numbers

Next numbers is an automatic document numbering feature. It allows you to enter a starting document number for each document type such ECOs. If you do not assign an ECO number manually, the system automatically assigns the next number to the ECO.

You can also use a check digit. This is an additional number that the system attaches to the end of the next number. Check digits prevent transpositions and data entry errors. Check digits are not sequential.

If you change the numbering scheme, you should change the next number to a value that is greater than the previously assigned numbers.
To set up next numbers for engineering change orders:

5. Locate next numbers for system 48 Work Order Processing.
6. For ECO Number, complete the following fields:
   - Next Number
   - Check Digit

See Also

- Setting Up Next Numbers (P0002) in the General Accounting Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Next Number</td>
<td>The next number which will automatically be assigned by the system. Next numbers can be used for many types of documents including voucher numbers, invoice numbers, journal entry numbers, employee numbers, address numbers and so on. Next numbers can be reviewed from the Operations Control Menu. You must adhere to the next numbers that have been preestablished unless custom programming has been provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Digit</td>
<td>A number that prevents the Next Numbers program (P0002) from assigning transposed numbers. If you use check digits, the system automatically adds a number to the end of each number that it assigns through Next Numbers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up Approval Routings

Use an approval routing to maintain a list of reviewers by that should receive an electronic mail notification of pending ECOs.

You can set up two types of approval routing. The approval routing master applies to a specific branch/plant and order type combination. Order specific approval routing applies to a specific ECO. After you have set up an approval routing master for your branch/plant, you can customize the routing for a specific ECO.

Setting up approval routings consists of the following tasks:

- Setting up an approval routing master
- Setting up an order specific routing (optional)

To set up approval routings

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G 3013), choose Approval Routing Master

On Approval Routing Master
Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Sequence Number
- Group
- Responsible Person

► To set up an order-specific approval routing

From Product Data Management (G30), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose Order Specific Routing

On Order Specific Routing

![Order Specific Routing Screen]

Complete the following fields:

- Order Number
- Group
- Sequence
- Responsible Person
What You Should Know About

Assigning reviewers to groups  The system notifies all reviewers in a group at the same time. The system notifies the groups in the order that they are defined within the user defined code. The codes do not have to be numeric. The system waits to send notification to a group until all members in the prior group have approved the ECO.

Deleting an approval list  When you delete an approval list, the system prompts you to confirm the deletion.
Work With Engineering Change Orders

Working With Engineering Change Orders

Use ECOs to plan, approve, and implement product changes. The creator of the ECO typically performs the following tasks:

- Locating existing ECOs (optional)
- Entering ECOs
- Defining routings for ECOs
- Defining changes
- Reviewing pending orders
- Defining details for ECOs (optional)
- Notifying ECO reviewers

What You Should Know About

Working with rejected ECOs

If any of the ECO reviewers rejects the ECO, the notification process stops. You must start the ECO notification process again.

Locating Existing ECOs

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Workbench

Before you create an ECO, you might want to verify that one does not exist for the change. Use the ECO Workbench to view and manage ECO information and check an ECOs progress.

You can locate an ECO using ECO Workbench or ECO Workbench By Item.
To locate existing ECOs

On ECO Workbench

1. Complete the following fields:
   - Branch
   - Item Number
   - Parent Work Order

2. Access the detail area.
The following fields display ECO information:

- Status
- ECO Number
- Type
- Description
- Originator
- Reason
- Phase
- Priority
- Target
- Actual
- Item Number (required)
- Parent Work Order
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Branch**          | A code that represents a high-level business unit. It can be used to reference a branch or plant that might have departments or jobs, which represent lower-level business units (data item MCU), subordinate to it. For example:  
  - Branch/Plant (MMCU) 
  - Dept A (MCU) 
  - Dept B (MCU) 
  - Job 123 (MCU) 

Business unit security is based on the higher-level business unit. |
| **Item Number**     | A number that the system assigns to an item. It can be in short, long, or 3rd item number format. |
| **ECO Number**      | The number that identifies an original document. This can be a voucher, an order number, an invoice, unapplied cash, a journal entry number, and so on.  

  \[ \ldots \ldots \ldots \textit{Form-specific information} \ldots \ldots \ldots \] 

This number identifies the engineering change order. You can either assign the order number or allow the system to assign a number with the Next Numbers feature. |
| **Parent W.O. No**  | This is the parent work order number. You can use this number to:  
  1. Enter default values for newly added work orders, for example, Type, Priority, Status, or Manager.  
  2. Group work orders for project setup and reporting |
| **TY (Order Type)** | A user defined code (00/DT) that identifies the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. J.D. Edwards has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them.)  

The following document types are defined by J.D. Edwards and should not be changed:  
- P Accounts Payable documents  
- R Accounts Receivable documents  
- T Payroll documents  
- I Inventory documents  
- O Purchase Order Processing documents  
- J General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing documents  
- S Sales Order Processing documents |
| **Originator**       | The address book number of the person who originated the change request. |
## Work With Engineering Change Orders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reason</td>
<td>User defined code system 40, type CR, that indicates the reason for an engineering change order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase In</td>
<td>User defined code system 40, type PH, that indicates how an engineering change order will be phased in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>A user defined code (00/TY) that indicates the type classification of a work order or engineering change order. You can use work order type as a selection criteria for work order approvals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 00, type PR) that indicates the relative priority of a work order or engineering change order in relation to other orders. A processing option for some forms lets you enter a default value for this field. The value then displays automatically in the appropriate fields on any work order you create on those forms and on the Project Setup form. You can either accept or override the default value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target</td>
<td>The date the work order is planned to be completed. Form-specific information The date the engineering change order is planned to be completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual</td>
<td>The date the work order or engineering change order is completed or canceled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Processing Options for ECO Workbench

**VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:**
Enter the DREAM Writer version to use for each program listed. If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used unless otherwise specified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program</th>
<th>Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ECO Entry</td>
<td>(P48020)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ECO Details <strong>ZJDE0001</strong>(P48092)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ECO Pending <strong>ZJDE0002</strong>(P48092)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ECO Parts List (P3013)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ECO Approval Audit/Review (P48185)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SCREEN DEFAULTS:**
Enter the values to preload to the screen at initial inquiry. If left blank, no value will be preloaded.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6. Reason Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Phase Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Work Order Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Originator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. From Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Thru Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Item Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Document Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Phase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CATEGORY CODE SELECTION DEFAULTS:**
Enter a ‘1’ next to three Category Codes to further define the ECO’s displayed. If left blank, Category Codes 02, 03, and 04 will be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category Code</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16a. Category 02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16b. Category 03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16c. Category 04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16d. Category 05</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16e. Status</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16f. Service Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16g. Skill Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16h. Experience Level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16i. Category 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Entering ECOs

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose Enter/Change ECO

You must first define the ECO number and codes that determine its priority, status, effectivity dates, and so on. Later you must define the routing, parts list and detail information.

#### To enter ECOs

On Enter/Change ECO

![Image of Enter/Change ECO interface]

Complete the following required fields:

- Branch/Plant
- ECO Number
- ECO Description
- Originator
- ECO Coordinator
- Drawing Change
- BOM Change
- Routing Change
- New Part Number
- Target Design
- Target Engineer
- Target Incorporation
- Type
- Priority
- Status
- Phase In
- Existing Disposition
- Reason
- Actual Design
- Actual Engineer
- Actual Incorporation
- Parent Work Order Number
- Document Type
- Full Description of Request

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Charge to CC</td>
<td>A code that represents a high-level business unit. It can be used to reference a branch or plant that might have departments or jobs, which represent lower-level business units (data item MCU), subordinate to it. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Branch/Plant (MMCU)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Dept A (MCU)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Dept B (MCU)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Job 123 (MCU)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Business unit security is based on the higher-level business unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Originator</td>
<td>The address book number of the person who originated the change request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO Coordinator</td>
<td>Address number of the person assigned to do the work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Address number of the person assigned to coordinate the ECO.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, and any other Address Book members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>........................ Form-specific information ........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawing Change</td>
<td>Indicates whether the engineering change order involves a drawing change. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y Yes, a drawing change is involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N No, a drawing change is NOT involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave this field blank, the system uses N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM Change</td>
<td>Indicates whether the engineering change order involves a bill of material change. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y Yes, a bill of material change is involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N No, a bill of material change is not involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If left blank the system uses N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routing Change</td>
<td>Indicates whether the engineering change order involves a routing change. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y Yes, a routing change is involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N No, a routing change is not involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave this field blank, the system uses N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Part Number</td>
<td>Indicates whether a new part number is required for an engineering change order. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y Yes, a new part number is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N No, a new part number is not required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you leave this field blank, the system uses N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Code</td>
<td>A subdivision of an object account. Subsidiary accounts include more detailed records of the accounting activity for an object account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Design</td>
<td>The date that an item is to arrive or that an action is to be complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>........................ Form-specific information ........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Engineer</td>
<td>The date the person responsible for the work order receives the work order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>........................ Form-specific information ........................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Product Data Management Process Manufacturing

**What You Should Know About**

**Deleting ECOs**  
To delete an ECO, you must first delete the ECO parts list, and then delete the ECO.

**Work orders**  
Specify a parent work order number on the ECO and you can retrieve related work orders, and review the history of a product.

### See Also

- *Defining Next Numbers (P0002)*

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Target Incorp</td>
<td>The date the work order is planned to be completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>A user defined code (00/SS) that describes the status of a work order or engineering change order. Any status change from 90 thru 99 automatically updates the date completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existing Disp</td>
<td>User defined code system 40, type ED, that identifies the disposition of the existing item affected by the engineering change order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual Design</td>
<td>This is a start date that you can enter, or an automatic start date which the planning system calculates using a backscheduling routine. The routine starts with the required date and offsets the total leadtime to calculate the appropriate start date. Will default from system date or you can enter a date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual Engineer</td>
<td>The date assigned for final inspection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual Incorp</td>
<td>The date the work order or engineering change order is completed or canceled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defining Routings for ECOs

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose Enter/Change ECO

After you enter the ECO, you can define a routing that indicates the steps necessary to implement the ECO. For example, the engineering department might request that your business try a new manufacturing process before implementation.

You cannot use this program to change production routings.

To define routings for ECOs

On Enter/Change ECO

1. Choose the Routing function.

On Routing Revisions

2. Complete the following fields:
   - Work Center
   - Operations Sequence Number
   - Operation Status
   - Description
- Start
- Request

3. Access the detail area.

4. Complete the following fields:
   - Assigned to
   - Labor Hours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Work Center</td>
<td>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, or branch/plant. You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department. Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority. Note: The system uses this value for Journal Entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.............. Form-specific information ..............

This is the code for the work center or assembly line.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oper Seq</td>
<td>In routings, this number is used to sequence the fabrication or assembly steps in the manufacture of an item. You can track costs and charge time by operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In bills of material, this number designates the routing step in the fabrication or assembly process that requires a specified component part. You define the operation sequence after you create the routing for the item. The Shop Floor Control system uses this field in the backflush/preflush by operation process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In engineering change orders, this number is used to sequence the assembly steps for the engineering change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Skip To fields allow you to enter an operation sequence that you want to begin the display of information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can use decimals to add steps between existing steps. For example, use 12.5 to add a step between steps 12 and 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St</td>
<td>A user defined code (31/OS) that identifies the current status of a work order or engineering change order as the operation steps in the routing are completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>This is a start date that you can enter, or an automatic start date which the planning system calculates using a backscheduling routine. The routine starts with the required date and offsets the total leaddate to calculate the appropriate start date. Will default from system date or you can enter a date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requested</td>
<td>The date that an item is to arrive or that an action is to be complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The planned completion date for the engineering change order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to</td>
<td>A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, and any other Address Book members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify ECO reviewers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labor</td>
<td>This is the standard hours of labor expected in the normal production of this item. The run labor hours in the Routing Master table (F3003) are the total hours it takes the specified crew size to complete the operation. The hours are multiplied by the crew size during shop floor release and product costing. Form-specific information For engineering change orders: This is the standard hours of labor expected to complete this step for the ECO.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Defining Changes**

**From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management**

**From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Parts List**

After you have created the ECO and defined the routing, you must define the change and identify the affected items.

Complete the following required tasks:

- Define affected items
- Define engineering changes

**To define affected items**

On ECO Parts List
1. Complete the following fields:
   - ECO Number
   - Change Type
   - Parent/Child Relationship
   - Item Number
   - Branch/Plant
   - To Revision
   - Effective From Date
   - Effective Thru Date

2. Access the detail area.
3. Complete the following fields for the parent item:
   - Batch Quantity
   - Unit of Measure
   - From Revision Level
   - Bill Type
   - Swap to Item
   - Swap to Revision
   - To/Current Drawing Revision

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECO Number</td>
<td>The number that identifies an original document. This can be a voucher, an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>order number, an invoice, unapplied cash, a journal entry number, and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chg Type</td>
<td>A code that describes the type of item change. This value is used by the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Related Items window to determine the number and nature of related items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>allowed. The value is also used during Engineering Change Population to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>determine the changes. Valid values are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N   New component or bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S   Swapping or replacing one item with another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C   Change an existing component or bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R   Remove an existing component or bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P/C</td>
<td>A code that indicates whether the item is a parent or component. Using this value, the system selects items for you on the Related Items window when you perform a where used inquiry for components or a single/multi-level inquiry for parent items. The Engineering Change Population program uses this value to determine the requested change. Valid values are: P The item is a parent. C The item is a component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item Number</td>
<td>A number that the system assigns to an item. It can be in short, long, or 3rd item number format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch/Plant</td>
<td>A code that represents a high-level business unit. It can be used to reference a branch or plant that might have departments or jobs, which represent lower-level business units (data item MCU), subordinate to it. For example: Branch/Plant (MMCU) Dept A (MCU) Dept B (MCU) Job 123 (MCU) Business unit security is based on the higher-level business unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Revision Level</td>
<td>The revision level for the part that will be reported next. This might not be the next sequential revision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Dates From</td>
<td>A date that indicates one of the following: When a component part goes into effect on a bill of material When a routing step goes into effect as a sequence on the routing for an item When a rate schedule is in effect The default is the current system date. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes. Items that are no longer effective in the future can still be recorded and recognized in Product Costing, Shop Floor Control, and Capacity Requirements Planning. The Material Requirements Planning system determines valid components by effectivity dates, not by the bill of material revision level. Some forms display data based on the effectivity dates you enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Form-specific information

In the Engineering Change Management system, entering *ALL in this field allows changes across multiple plants.

Form-specific information

You must specify effectivity dates for the changes you want to make. The Engineering Change Population program does not process ECOs without effectivity dates.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thru</td>
<td>A date that indicates one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a component part is no longer in effect on a bill of material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a routing step is no longer in effect as a sequence on the routing for an item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a rate schedule is no longer active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default is December 31 of the default year defined in the Data Dictionary for Century Change Year. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes. Items that are no longer effective in the future can still be recorded and recognized in Product Costing, Shop Floor Control, and Capacity Requirements Planning. The Material Requirements Planning system determines valid components by effectivity dates, not by the bill of material revision level. Some forms display data based on the effectivity dates you enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Form-specific information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You must specify effectivity dates for the changes you want to make. The Engineering Change Population program does not process engineering change orders without effectiveness dates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch Qty</td>
<td>The quantity of finished units that you expect this bill of material or routing to produce. This field allows you to specify varying quantities of components based on the amount of finished goods produced. For example, 1 ounce of solvent is required per unit up to 100 units of finished product. However, if 200 units of finished product is produced, 2 ounces of solvent are required per finished unit. In this example, you would set up batch quantities for 100 and 200 units of finished product specifying the proper amount of solvent per unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill Type of Material</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 40, type TB), that designates the type of bill of material. You can define different types of bills of material for different uses. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M (Default) Standard manufacturing bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RWK Rework bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SPR Spare parts bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The system enters bill type M in the work order header when you create a work order, unless you specify another bill type. The system reads the bill type code on the work order header to know which bill of material to use to create the work order parts list. MRP uses the bill type code to identify the bill of material to use when it attaches MRP messages. Batch bills of material must be type M for shop floor control, product costing, and MRP processing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## What You Should Know About

### Related items
For all engineering change types (except swap parent) you must enter information about the change for other items on Related Items.

### Updating ECO revision levels
You can use the ECO Next Revision Levels user defined code table (00/NR) to automatically update revision levels based on the sequence you define.

### Updating component revision levels
Set a processing option to pre-load all single level parent revision levels for the component you’re changing.

### Updating drawing revision levels
You can maintain the drawing revision level for each item. The ECO Population program can update the drawing revision level in either the Bill of Material and the Item Master tables.

### To define engineering changes

On ECO Parts List

1. Choose the Related Items option.

The name of this form varies depending on the Change Type and Parent/Child Relationship values.
2. On Related Items, complete the following fields for each related item:
   - Item
   - Branch/Plant
   - To Revision Level
   - Effective From Date
   - Effective Thru Date
3. Access the detail area.
4. Complete the following fields:
   - From Revision
   - Batch Quantity
   - Unit of Measure
   - Bill Type
   - Swap to Item
   - Swap to Revision
   - To/Cur Drawing Revision
   - Component Sequence Number
   - Quantity Per
   - Operation Sequence Number
   - Fixed/Variable
5. Press Enter to accept the changes and exit the Related Items window.
6. Press Enter to accept the changes and exit the Parts List form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type Bill of Material</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 40, type TB), that designates the type of bill of material. You can define different types of bills of material for different uses. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M (Default) Standard manufacturing bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RWK Rework bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SPR Spare parts bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The system enters bill type M in the work order header when you create a work order, unless you specify another bill type. The system reads the bill type code on the work order header to know which bill of material to use to create the work order parts list. MRP uses the bill type code to identify the bill of material to use when it attaches MRP messages. Batch bills of material must be type M for shop floor control, product costing, and MRP processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td>A date that indicates one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a component part goes into effect on a bill of material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a routing step goes into effect as a sequence on the routing for an item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a rate schedule is in effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The default is the current system date. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes. Items that are no longer effective in the future can still be recorded and recognized in Product Costing, Shop Floor Control, and Capacity Requirements Planning. The Material Requirements Planning system determines valid components by effectivity dates, not by the bill of material revision level. Some forms display data based on the effectivity dates you enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component Sequence</td>
<td>A number that indicates the sequence of the components on a bill of material. It initially indicates the relative sequence in which a component was added to a kit or single level bill of material. You can modify this number to change the sequence in which the components appear on the bill of material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Skip To fields allow you to enter a component line number that you want to begin the display of information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qty Per</td>
<td>The number of units to which the system applies the transaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Fixed/Variable Quantity      | Indicates if the quantity per assembly for an item on the bill of material varies according to the quantity of the parent item produced or is fixed regardless of the parent quantity. This value also determines if the component quantity is a percent of the parent quantity. Valid values are:  
  - F  Fixed Quantity  
  - V  Variable Quantity (Default)  
  - %  Quantities are expressed as a percentage and must total 100%  

For fixed quantity components, the Work Order and MRP systems do not extend the component’s quantity per assembly value by the order quantity.  

For Process Manufacturing, the system stores percent components. Therefore, the system treats zero batch sizes like variable quantity components, and treats batch sizes greater than zero like fixed quantity components.  

To remove one of the items listed above, select the row and click Delete before you click OK.

**What You Should Know About**

**Updating the bills of material**  
This task does not update the work order parts list for the item. You can update your bills of material with engineering change information using one of the following methods:  
- Manually  
- Run the Where Used Update program  
- Run the Engineering Change Population program

**Deleting or changing the parts list**  
You cannot delete or change the parts ECO parts list after you have run the Engineering Change Population program.
Using effectivity dates and revision levels

Use effectivity dates to phase in and out any product or process changes. Effectivity dates might not require an ECO process and are for smaller, shorter term or lower impact changes.

Revision levels usually require an ECO and are for permanent, long term changes. Revision levels include changes to form, fit, or function and should match on a bill of material and routing for the item. You can track changes in a bill of material with revision levels. Use the Revision Level field to display a revision history of the bill. These revision levels are user defined and for reference only.

Updating revision levels

You can only update an ECO with the next revision level if there are no pending ECOs for the item. If there are pending ECOs, the system displays an error message and does not update the revision level.

Auto Inquiry

The ECO system automatically selects related items based on the change type and parent/child relationship values. An option is available to deselect related items on which you do not want to implement the change.

*ALL

The *ALL function only works with ECOs that use Auto Inquiry. The Engineering Change Population program only updates branch/plant records that match the defined parts list.
Processing Options for ECO Parts List

VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:
Enter the Dream Writer version to use for each screen listed. If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.
1. Item Master Revisions (P4101) __________________
2. Item Inquiry w/Word Search (P41200) __________________
3. Supply and Demand Inquiry (P4021) __________________
4. Bill of Material Inquiry (P30200) __________________
5. Where Used Inquiry (P30201) __________________
6. Purchase Order Inquiry (P430301) __________________
7. W.O. Scheduling Workbench (P31225) __________________
8. ECO Master Revisions (P48020) __________________
9. ECO Details **ZJDE0001** (P48092) __________________
10. ECO Pending **ZJDE0002** (P48092) __________________

INCLUSION RULES:
11. Enter the version of Supply/Demand Inclusion Rules to use when adding orders to the ECO Pending Orders Detail. If left blank, no orders will be added.

REVISION LEVELS:
12. Enter a ‘1’ to default the “To Rev” field to the next revision when no pending ECO’s exist.

12a. Enter the user defined code table to retrieve the next revision level. If left blank, UDC table 30/NR will be used.

What You Should Know About Processing Options

When you set processing option 12 for updating to the next revision level, the system updates the revision level as follows for the change types:

**New parent (N/P)**
For new parent information on Parts List, the revision level is updated.

For component information on Related Items, the revision level is not updated.

**Change parent (C/P)**
For existing parent information on Parts List, the revision level is not updated.

For revised parent information on Related Items, the revision level is updated.
### Work With Engineering Change Orders

**Swap parent (S/P)**
For swap out parent information on Parts List, the revision level is not updated.

For new parent information in the Parts List fold area, the revision level is updated.

Updating the revision level on Related Items is not allowed.

**Remove parent (R/P)**
For parent to remove information on Parts List, the revision level is not updated.

Updating revision levels on Related Items is not allowed.

**New component (N/C)**
For new component information on Parts List, the revision level is not updated.

For parent information on Related Items, the revision levels are updated.

**Change component (C/C)**
For information on the component on Parts List, the revision level is updated.

For information on Related Items, the revision level is updated.

**Swap component (S/C)**
For component to swap information on Parts List, the revision level is not updated.

For new component information in the Parts List fold area, the revision level is not updated.

For parent information on Related Items, the revision level is updated.

**Remove component (R/C)**
For component to remove information on Parts List, the revision level is not updated.

For parent information on Related Items, the revision level is updated.

---

### Reviewing Pending Orders

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Parts List
After you process existing work orders and purchase orders, you can review pending orders for items affected by the ECO.

Use pending orders to perform the following:

- Enter a quantity and cost estimate of incorporating the ECO into the work order or part on the purchase order
- Work with existing work orders or purchase orders
- Work with open work orders or purchase orders

The system displays the orders based on the Supply/Demand Inclusion Rules you specify in the processing options.

▶ To review purchase orders

On ECO Parts List, choose the Pending Orders function.

The following fields display ECO information:

- Order Number
- Type
- Due Date
- Open Quantity
- Cost
- Exist Disposition
### Work With Engineering Change Orders

#### Defining Details for ECOs

> From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

> From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose Enter/Change ECO

Use details to enter supporting data such as costs, dates, affected work orders, purchase orders, and approval history.

Complete the following optional tasks:

- Enter a text description
- Enter supplemental info
To enter a text description

1. On Enter/Change Parts List, choose the ECO Detail option.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - Record Type
   - ECO Number
   - ECO Description

To enter supplemental information

You can enter supplemental data items to track the ECO. For example, you could note the costs and leadtimes involved in the implementation of the ECO. This screen is for information only and does not affect processing of the ECO.

On ECO Detail Types

Complete the following fields:

- ECO Number
- Code Type
- Quantity
- Cost
- Date
- Leadtime

See Also

- Setting Up Category Codes (P00051) in the Shop Floor Control Guide
Work With Engineering Change Orders

Processing Options for Enter/Change ECO

DOCUMENT TYPE:
1. Enter the default value for Document Type. If left blank, 'EN' will be used.

ECO STATUS:
2. Enter the default value for ECO Status. If left blank, then blank will be used.

NOTE TYPE:
3. Enter the default value for the Note Type that will be displayed in the subfile. If left blank, then Note Type 'A' will be used. More...

VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:
Enter the DREAM Writer version to use for each version listed. If left blank version ZJDE00001 will be used.
4. ECO Details (P48092)
5. ECO Parts List (P3013)
6. ECO Workbench (P30225)
7. ECO Pending Orders (P48092)
8. ECO Approval Notification (P48181)
9. ECO Approval Audit/Review (P48185)

Notifying ECO Reviewers

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Notification

After you define an ECO and its routings and parts list, use the ECO Notification program to send notices to the reviewers that you have defined in the approval routing master.

You run this program once. After all of the reviewers in the first review group have reviewed the ECO, the system sends notification to the next review group.

What You Should Know About

Notifying reviewers
You can run ECO Notification in two ways:

- To process several ECOs, use the data selection in ECO Notification
- To process a single ECO, run ECO Notification from Enter/Change ECO
**Item flash notice**

You can set a processing option to activate flash messages for the item affected by the ECO. You can then view the flash message from inquiry programs. The system deactivates the flash message when you run the Engineering Change Population program to update the bill of material for the item.

**Processing Options for ECO Notification**

ECO APPROVAL NOTIFICATION:
1. Enter the Flash Message to activate. If left blank, the Flash Message will not be updated.

☐ Verify that the ECO parts list contains the change type and relationship values you want. See *Defining the Change with a Parts List (P3013)*.

**Exercises**

See the exercises for this chapter.
Review Engineering Change Orders

Reviewing Engineering Change Orders

An ECO reviewer reviews ECO and checks outstanding ECOs that await approval.

An ECO coordinator reviews ECO information to:

- Check work orders and purchase orders for affected items
- Determine if anyone has rejected an ECO
- Check an ECO’s progress
- Plan and schedule work
- Review who is in the process of reviewing an ECO
- Review who is pending notification

Complete the following tasks:

☑ Locate ECO information

☑ Review future bills of material

☑ Print ECO information
Locating ECO Information

Locating ECO information consists of the following optional tasks:

- Locate ECO revision information
- Locate approval audit information
- Locate open tasks

For an ECO, you can locate all the revision level changes made to the item. In order to view the most current revision information, you should run the ECO Population program daily.

You can review the approval status of an ECO to display which reviewers have approved it, are in the process of reviewing it, and who is pending notification.

You can locate an ECO for requested dates, start dates, and labor hours by operation to help you plan and schedule work.

To locate ECO revision information

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Revision Inquiry

On ECO Revisions Inquiry
Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Item Number

The following fields display revision information:

- Drawing Revision
- Related Order
- Change Type
- Type Bill
- Batch Quantity
- Unit of Measure
- From Revision

**Processing Options for ECO Revision Inquiry**

**VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:**
Enter the DREAM Writer version to use for each program listed. If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used unless otherwise specified.

1. ECO Entry               (P48020)            ____________
2. BOM Revisions          (P3002 )            ____________

To locate approval audit information

*From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management*

*From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Approval/Audit Review*

On ECO Approval/Audit Review
Complete the following field:

- ECO Number

Processing Options for Order Approval Audit/Review

ECO OR WORK ORDER APPROVAL:
1. Enter ‘1’ to display/approve Work
   Orders. If left blank, ECO orders
   will be displayed/approved.

VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:
Enter the DREAM Writer version to use
for each program listed. If left
blank, version ‘ZJDE0001’ will be used.

2. ECO Approval  (P4818)
3. Work Order Approval  (P4818)
4. ECO Master  (P48020)
5. Work Order Header  (P48013)

APPROVAL PROCESSING:
6. Enter a ‘1’ to allow access to all
   approval records. If left blank,
   only current user’s records will be
   available for approval.

▶ To locate open tasks

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Open Task Review
On ECO Open Task Review

Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- As of Date
- Assigned to
- Work Center
- Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As of Date</td>
<td>A numeric code that identifies either the period number or the date that you want to locate. If you leave this field blank, the system uses the ending date of the current period that is set up for the company. Valid period numbers are 1 through 14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Status</td>
<td>A user defined code (31/OS) that identifies the current status of a work order or engineering change order as the operation steps in the routing are completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thru</td>
<td>A user defined code (system 31, type OS) used as an end point to select work order information to display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Processing Options for ECO Open Task Review

SCREEN DEFAULTS:
1. Enter the default document type to be used. If left blank, '*' will load all document types.

2. Enter the default value for From Status.

3. Enter the default value for Thru Status.

VERSION TO EXECUTE:

Enter the DREAM writer version to use for each program listed. If no version is entered, ZJDE0001 will be used.

4. ECO Entry (P48020)
5. ECO Parts List (P3013)

Reviewing Future Bills of Material

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose Future Bill Inquiry

You can review a bill of material as it would look at a specified date in the future, if pending ECOs are implemented.

To review future bills of material

On Future Bill Inquiry
3. Complete the following fields:
   - Branch/Plant
   - Parent Item

   If more than one selection type exists, the system displays Batch Quantity/Type Selection.

4. On Batch Quantity/Type Selection, enter the selection option next to the future bill of material that you want to review.
5. To review more information about the future bill of material, access the detail area.

**Processing Options for Future Bill Inquiry**

**DEFAULT INFORMATION:**
1. Enter the default Bill Type.
2. Enter a '1' to default the As of Date to the current date. If left blanks, all dates will be shown.

**VERSION TO EXECUTE:**
Enter the DREAM Writer version to use.
If left blanks, ZJDE0001 will default.
3. ECO Workbench (P30225)
4. ECO Header (P48020) from P30BREV

**Printing ECO Information**

You can print ECO information to help you manage the ECOs you create. There are two ECO reports available:

- ECO Details Report
- Open ECO Report
ECO Details Report

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management.

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Details Report.

You can generate the ECO Details report to list all details for a specific ECO. Set up processing options to specify the amount and type of information in the report.

ECO Number: 2436 EN

Description: Redesign of part 212

Date Entered: 10/15/93

Originator:                   Branch/Plant: CHI

Drawing Change: Y

Routing Change: Y

New Part Number: N

Status: 40

Reason: DE

Phase In: UUP

Use Up: Rework

Target Dates: Design 08/01/98, Engineering 08/01/98, Incorporation 08/15/98

Full Description of Request:
Redesign of part 212 - Sides need to be redesigned so that they fit into a slot in the back of the unit in order to better handle extra weight.

ECO Parts List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Item</th>
<th>Branch</th>
<th>P/C TOC</th>
<th>Effective Dates</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>To</th>
<th>Rev</th>
<th>Seq</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>303-A</td>
<td>CHI</td>
<td>N C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303-A</td>
<td>CHI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212</td>
<td>M30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>M30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XYZ</td>
<td>M30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333Z</td>
<td>M30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>701</td>
<td>M20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>M20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303-A</td>
<td>M40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Processing Options for ECO Details Report

PRINT OPTIONS:
Enter a ‘1’ to print any of the following details:
1. ECO Notes
2. ECO Additional Details
3. ECO Parts List

NOTE TYPE:
Enter the default Note Type that will be printed. If left blank, Note Type ‘A’ will be used.

NOTE TYPE:
### Open ECO Report

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management.

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose Open ECO Report.

Use the Open ECOs report to list the ECOs that are currently in the approval process or as a basis for running the ECO Population program.

You can customize this report as follows:

- Set up the report by document type and status code
- Set up the report by category code and product family
- Set up the report by status code for pending approval
- Set up the report by status code for ECOs that have been approved

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Branch/Plant</th>
<th>ECO Number</th>
<th>Date Entered</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Disp. Yr</th>
<th>T P Target Date</th>
<th>Actual Date</th>
<th>Originator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M30</td>
<td>3421</td>
<td>11/18/93</td>
<td>Redesign Projector Case</td>
<td>E1</td>
<td>EV</td>
<td>UUP UAI B M</td>
<td>07/15/98</td>
<td>Dobson, Jane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M30</td>
<td>3439</td>
<td>11/18/93</td>
<td>Redesign chair for Desk Set</td>
<td>E1</td>
<td>EV</td>
<td>MVR UAI C H</td>
<td>09/01/98</td>
<td>Allen, Ray</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M30</td>
<td>3447</td>
<td>11/18/93</td>
<td>Add extra screws to hardware</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>IMD RKK B M</td>
<td>03/31/98</td>
<td>Wright, Allen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M20</td>
<td>84531</td>
<td>03/24/95</td>
<td>701A Swap Component in 205</td>
<td>E1</td>
<td>CC</td>
<td>IMD</td>
<td>B M</td>
<td>05/15/98</td>
<td>Planner, Mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M30</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>07/28/94</td>
<td>333z N/P</td>
<td>E5</td>
<td>CC</td>
<td>IMD</td>
<td>B M</td>
<td>08/15/98</td>
<td>Dobson, Jane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHI</td>
<td>2436</td>
<td>10/15/93</td>
<td>Redesign of part 212</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>DE</td>
<td>UUP RKK B M</td>
<td>08/15/98</td>
<td>Dobson, Jane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M30</td>
<td>2461</td>
<td>11/18/93</td>
<td>Redesign of part 212</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>DE</td>
<td>UUP RKK B M</td>
<td>08/15/98</td>
<td>Martin, John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M30</td>
<td>8004</td>
<td>07/28/94</td>
<td>XYZ N/C in Parent 333z</td>
<td>E1</td>
<td>CC</td>
<td>IMD</td>
<td>B M</td>
<td>09/15/98</td>
<td>Dobson, Jane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M40</td>
<td>84558</td>
<td>03/30/95</td>
<td>Change Seasoning</td>
<td>E1</td>
<td>CC</td>
<td>AVL</td>
<td>B M</td>
<td>07/25/98</td>
<td>Abbot, Dominique</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Approve Engineering Change Orders

Approving Engineering Change Orders

After you have located an ECO for review, you must indicate your approval or rejection. The reviewer typically performs this task.

After the last person in the approval routing has approved the ECO, the system updates the status code with the value you specify in a processing option.

Approving engineering change orders consists of the following tasks:

- [ ] Reviewing engineering change orders for approval
- [ ] Updating bills of material (optional)

Before You Begin

- [ ] Locate the ECOs that have been assigned for your review. You can either have the system notify you automatically or you can locate open ECOs with ECO Approval. See Reviewing ECOs.

Reviewing ECOs for Approval

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose ECO Approval

To review an ECO for approval

On ECO Approval
1. Locate the ECOs that await your approval.

Complete the following fields:

- Approver Number (required)
- Branch/Plant (required)
- Status

2. For each ECO, complete the following fields to indicate your approval or rejection:

- Status (required)
- Date Approved
- Note

What You Should Know About

**Protecting the approval field**

You can set a processing option to protect the approval field so that only the current user can change approval status.

**Defining additional status codes**

You can define additional approval status codes on UDC 30/ST. Approval status code A is hard-coded and is the only value that initiates the notification of other review groups.
Entering text
You can type text in the detail area to provide more information regarding your approval.

Rejecting an ECO
To reject an ECO, use status code R. This stops the notification process. After a reviewer rejects an ECO, the creator of the ECO must redefine the ECO and restart the notification process.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approver Number</td>
<td>A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, and any other Address Book members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>User defined code system 30, type ST, which indicates the approval status of an engineering change order. For example: A Accept (initiates notification of next review group) R Reject (stops the notification process)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date Approved</td>
<td>The date on which an approval authority has approved or rejected an ECO. The default value is the current system date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>A 40-character generic description.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Processing Options for ECO Approval**

**ECO OR WORK ORDER APPROVAL**
1. Enter a ‘1’ to approve Work Orders. If left blank, ECO orders will be approved.

**ORDER TYPE**
2. Enter the default search order type. If left blank all order types will be used.

**APPROVAL PROCESSING**
3. Enter the default search approval status. If left blank all status’s will be used.

**VERSIONS TO EXECUTE:**
Enter the DREAM Writer versions to execute for the programs listed below. If left blank ZJDE0001 will be used.
4. ECO Entry (P48020)
5. Work Order Entry (P48013)
6. ECO Approval Notification (P48181)

**APPROVAL ROUTING COMPLETION:**
7. Enter the status code to update the ECO/Work Order Master (F4801) when approval routing is complete. If left blank, no status update will occur.

**PROCESSING DEFAULTS:**
8. Enter a ‘1’ to allow access to all approval records. If left blank, only current user’s records will be available for approval.
Approve Engineering Change Orders

Updating Bills of Material

From Manufacturing Systems (G3), choose Engineering Change Management

From Engineering Change Management (G3013), choose Engineering Change Population

For ECOs with attached parts lists, you can process the ECO parts list and related items list to update the Bill of Material table with the requested changes.

The Engineering Change Population program performs the following:

- Processes the ECOs
- Updates the bills of material for the items on the ECO
- Creates a report in proof or final mode that describes the requested changes
- Updates ECO related information in the Branch/Plant table
- Updates the Item Master table for item flash messages based on other outstanding ECOs
- Validates the ECO for full approval before accepting the requested changes
- Updates the effectivity dates
- Updates the drawing revision level
- Copies substitute items from the old component to the new component
- Updates the parent/component revision level

J.D. Edwards recommends that you first run this program in proof mode. In proof mode, the report lists all requested changes without actually changing any files. Review the report and then run the program in final mode to update files. After you run this program and update the Bills of Material table, you cannot change the parts list and run the program again.

The Engineering Change Population program only updates the bill of material. You must update the routing to include the same item revision level as the bill of material if you want to synchronize them.
Before You Begin

- Verify that the ECO has been approved by all reviewers
- Verify that the ECO parts list contains the change type and relationship values you want. See Defining the Change.
- Verify that the ECO related items list contains the items that you want to include in the change.

Example: Engineering Change Population Report

In proof mode, the report lists all requested changes without actually changing any files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ECO Number...</th>
<th>8004 EN</th>
<th>Date Entered...</th>
<th>07/28/94</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Originator...</td>
<td>9200 Dobson, Jane</td>
<td>Branch/Plant...</td>
<td>M30 Memphis Mfg. Plant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drawing Change...</th>
<th>Y</th>
<th>Status...</th>
<th>E1 ECO Entered</th>
<th>Type...</th>
<th>B Marketing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BOM Change...</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Reason...</td>
<td>CC Customer Change Request</td>
<td>Priority...</td>
<td>M Med</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routing Change...</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Phase In...</td>
<td>IMD Immediate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Part Number...</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Existing Disp.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>...Target Dates...</th>
<th>...Actual Dates...</th>
<th>...Category Codes...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Design...</td>
<td>08/01/98 Design...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineering...</td>
<td>09/01/98 Engineering...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorporation...</td>
<td>09/15/98 Incorporation...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEFORE CHANGE</th>
<th>AFTER CHANGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parent Item...</td>
<td>Component Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component Item</td>
<td>Branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3332 OAK SHELF UNIT</td>
<td>XYZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1x10x6' OAK S4S</td>
<td>Qty Per</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed/Variable V</td>
<td>Op Seq.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What You Should Know About

Revision Level Control
You can protect the item revision level that you set up in Plant Manufacturing Data with a processing option so that it is only updated by the Engineering Change Population program.

Drawing Information
You can protect the item drawing information that you set up in Item Master Revisions with a processing option so that it is only updated by the Engineering Change Population program.

What You Should Know About Processing Options

Revision Level Control (10)
If you set the Revision Level Control processing option, and the item receives a new bill revision level, the ECO Population program searches all BOMs that use the item, then updates each BOMs Component Revision Level to the new item revision level.

Processing Options for ECO - Bill of Material Population

PROOF OR FINAL MODE:
1. Enter a ‘1’ if this is to be run in Final Mode. If left blanks, program will run in Proof Mode.

ECO APPROVAL VALIDATION:
2. Enter a ‘1’ to validate ECO as fully approved before allowing final mode update.

FINAL MODE UPDATES:
3. Enter a ‘1’ to update the ECO’s Actual Incorporation Date with today’s date. If left blank, no date update will occur.
4. Enter the ECO Status to use for updating the ECO as incorporated. If left blank, no status change will occur.

FINAL MODE UPDATE (cont):
5. Enter a ‘1’ to update the Item Balance File (F4102) Revision Level when the Bill of Material Revision Level is updated for a parent. If left blank, no change will occur to the Item Balance Revision Level (IBMERL).
6. Enter a '1' to update the Item Balance file (F4102) ECO Revision Information. If left blank, no update will occur.

FINAL MODE UPDATE (cont):
7. Enter the Item Flash Message to use when resetting the flash message due to other outstanding ECOs. If left blank, no change will occur to the Item Flash Message.

8. Enter a '1' to update the Item Master File (F4101) Drawing Revision Level. If left blank, no change will occur to the Drawing Revision Level (IMRVNO).

FINAL MODE UPDATE (cont):
9. Enter a '1' to copy substitute items from old components to new components. If left blank, substitute items will not be copied.

REVISION LEVEL CONTROL:
10. Enter a '1' to update the Component Revision Level in all Bills of Material where a parent item is used. Only items at the current Bill Revision Level will be updated.

Exercises
See the exercises for this chapter.
Appendices
Appendix A - Data Model
Appendix B – Test Yourself Answers

Working With Work Centers

1. True
2. False
   A pay point code of B indicates the work center will have both labor and material backflushed through it.
3. True
4. False
   You must run the Frozen Cost Update program (P30835) to update frozen costs manually.
5. False
   Move and Queue hours are used in leadtime and scheduling calculations.

Working With Leadtimes

1. C
2. B
3. A

1. True.
2. Manufacturing leadtime is the total number of days required to build an item from its lowest level components (not including purchased parts) to the final assembly.
3. True.
Appendix C - Leadtime Calculations

Understanding Leadtime Calculations

Determining leadtime is an essential part of any manufacturing or scheduling process. For any product that you purchase or manufacture, you encounter a time lag between when you order or start it and when you receive or finish it. To account for the lag, you must estimate the extra time and allow for it in your planning.

Several J.D. Edwards Manufacturing systems use leadtimes. In Product Data Management, you enter routing and work center information, and run the Leadtime Rollup program to calculate leadtimes. The Shop Floor Control system uses the leadtime information to calculate the start date of a work order based on the order's due date. For more information, see also Appendix C – Leadtimes in the Shop Floor Control Guide.

This appendix describes how the Leadtime Rollup program calculates leadtimes. The following information on the Enter/Change Routing form is used by the Leadtime Rollup program.

**Time basis code**

Identify the rate used for machine or labor hours entered for any routing step. This is how run hours are expressed for an item (for example, 25 hours per 1000 pieces or 15 hours per 10000 pieces). You must define these codes on UDC 30/TB.

**Run hours**

Run hours consists of:

- Machine hours, which are the hours required to produce the amount from the time basis code.
- Labor hours, which are the number of labor hours necessary to produce the amount from the time basis code.

**Move hours**

The hours a work order is in transit from the completion of one operation to the beginning of the next.
The Leadtime Rollup program calculates the following:

**Total Queue/Move Hours**

The amount of time a work order is in queue at an operation and the amount of time to move the work order between operations. Total queue/move hours are the sum of the move hours and the queue hours.

\[(\text{Move hours} + \text{Queue hours}) = \text{Total queue/move hours}\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>2+4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>0+0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queue Hours</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setup Hours**

The hours required to set up machinery to run a specific item, regardless of quantity.

Sum of standard setup hours for each operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Hours</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Level Leadtime

The system calculates this value if the Fixed Leadtime Flag is set to F and the Manufacturing Leadtime Quantity is greater that zero. Otherwise, the system uses the value you entered manually to calculate start dates of work orders.

The following values are defined:

- The level leadtime has been calculated previously:
  - Queue hours = 9
  - Setup hours = 1
- M or L Either the machine or labor hours based on the Prime Load Code
- SUM Sum of all operations
- TIMB Time Basis Code
- MLQ Manufacturing Leadtime Quantity
- E Number of employees in work center
- M Number of machines in work center

\[
\frac{\text{SUM} \left\{ (\text{M or L})/(E \text{ or M}) \times \text{MLQ} \right\}}{\text{TIMB}} + \text{setup + total queue/move} \\
\text{Work hours per day (from constants file)}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Operation 30} & \quad \text{Operation 60} & \quad \text{Operation 30} \\
\frac{(8/1) \times 2000}{10,000} & + \frac{(12/1) \times 2000}{10,000} & + \frac{(12/1) \times 2000}{10,000} + 1 + 9
\end{align*}
\]

1.6 + 2.4 + 2.4 + 1 + 9 = 16.4

16.4/8 = 3 days level leadtime
Per Unit Leadtime

The system calculates this value when the Leadtime Flag is set to V. It uses the time basis code from the routing to calculate leadtime per unit and the time basis code from the Item Master as a common factor to multiply all the leadtimes per units.

The following values are defined:

- **M or L**: Either the machine or labor hours based on the Prime Load Code
- **SUM**: Sum of all operations
- **TIMB**: Time Basis Code
- **E**: Number of employees in work center
- **M**: Number of machines in work center

\[
\text{SUM} = \frac{(\text{M or L})/(\text{E or M}) \times \text{TIMB (item balance)}}{\text{TIMB (Routing)}}
\]

\[
\text{Operation 30: } \frac{(8/1) \times 10,000}{10,000} + \frac{(12/1) \times 10,000}{10,000} + \frac{(12/1) \times 10,000}{10,000}
\]

\[8 + 12 + 12 = 32 \text{ hours per unit leadtime}

Cumulative Leadtime

The cumulative leadtime is the sum of the level leadtime and the longest cumulative leadtime of any of the item’s next lower level components.
Appendix C - Leadtime Calculations

Manufacturing Leadtime

Manufacturing Leadtime is the sum of the level leadtime and the longest manufacturing leadtime of any of the item’s lower level components.

LT101 (end item)
Level LT = 2
Cum LT = 2 + 8 = 10

B (raw material)
LT = 5
Level LT = 7
Cum LT = 7 + 0 = 7

C (sub assembly)
Level LT = 4
Cum LT = 4 + 4 = 8

D (raw material)
LT = 2
Level LT = 4
Cum LT = 4 + 0 = 4

E (raw material)
LT = 2
Level LT = 2
Cum LT = 2 + 0 = 2

Leadtimes for Purchased Parts

For purchased parts you must set the level leadtime. The cumulative leadtime is equal to the level leadtime. The following values are zero:

- Manufacturing leadtime
- Leadtime per unit
- Total queue/move hours
- Setup hours
Appendix A — Functional Servers

Several J.D. Edwards programs access functional servers. The purpose of functional servers is to provide a central location for standard business rules about entering documents, such as vouchers, invoices, and journal entries. These business rules establish the following:

- Data dictionary default values
- Field edits and valid values
- Error processing
- Relationships between fields or applications

The advantages of a functional server are:

- It reduces maintenance of entry programs because edit rules reside in one central location.
- You can standardize documents across all applications because you create them using the same business rules.
- Generally, the user interface (appearance and interaction) of a form is now separate from how a program works.

The steps for setting up business rules for an entry program are:

1. Create a DREAM Writer version for a specific functional server program (for example, XT0411Z1 for voucher entry).
2. Set the processing options within the version according to your company requirements.
3. Specify the version you want the entry program to use in the processing options for that entry program.

You can have all your entry programs use the same DREAM Writer version (and thus, use the same rules) or you can set up different DREAM Writer versions. J.D. Edwards provides DREAM Writer version ZJDE0001 as the default functional server version for your entry programs.

Only the person responsible for system-wide setup should make changes to the functional server version. For more information about how to set up DREAM Writer versions, see the Technical Foundation Guide.
Example: Voucher Processing Functional Server

The following graphic shows the programs that use the voucher processing functional server. J.D. Edwards provides two demo versions of the functional server, ZJDE0001 and ZJDE0002.
Glossary

This glossary defines terms in the context of your use of JDE systems and the accompanying user guide.

access. To get to the information or functions provided by the system through menus, screens, and reports.

allocated material. Material on hand or on order that is assigned to specific future production or customer orders. Syonymous with reserved material.

alphabetical character. Represents data by using letters and other symbols from the keyboard (such as * & #). Contrast with numeric character.

alphanumeric character. Represents data in a combination of letters, numbers, and other symbols (such as * & #).

alternate operation. Replacement for a normal step in the manufacturing process or routing for an item.

alternate routing. A routing, usually less preferred than the primary routing, but resulting in an identical item.

assemble-to-order. A make-to-order product for which key components (bulk, semi-finished, intermediate, subassembly, fabricated, purchased, packaging, etc.) used in the assembly or finishing process are planned and stocked in anticipation of a customer order. Receipt of an order initiates assembly of the finished product. This is useful when a large number of finished products can be assembled from common components.

assembly. A group of subassemblies and/or parts that are put together and constitute a major subdivision for the final product. An assembly may be an end item or a component of a higher level assembly.

audit trail. The detailed, verifiable history of a processed transaction. The history consists of the original documents, transaction entries, and posting of records, and usually concludes with a report.

automatic accounting instruction (AAI). A code that points to an account in the chart of accounts. AAs define rules for programs that automatically generate journal entries. This includes interfaces between Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Financial Reporting and the General Accounting system. Each system that interfaces with the General Accounting system has AAs. For example, AAs can direct the Post to General Ledger program to post a debit to a certain expense account and an automatic credit to a certain accounts payable account.

backflush. The deduction from inventory records of the component parts used in an assembly or subassembly by exploding the bill of material by the production count of assemblies produced.

back scheduling. A technique for calculating operation start dates and due dates. The schedule is computed starting with the due date for the order and working backward to determine the required start date and/or due dates for each operation.

backup copy. A copy of original data preserved on a magnetic tape or diskette as protection against destruction or loss.

batch. A group of like records or transactions that the computer treats as a single unit during processing. For identification purposes, the system usually assigns each batch a unique identifier, known as a “batch number.”
batch bill of material. A bill of material in which the statement of quantity per is based on the standard batch quantity of the parent.

batch header. Information the computer uses as identification and control for a group of transactions or records in a batch.

batch job. A task or group of tasks you submit for processing that the system treats as a single unit during processing, for example, printing reports and purging files. The computer performs these tasks with little or no user interaction.

batch processing. A method by which the computer selects jobs from the job queue, processes them, and writes output to the output queue. Contrast with interactive processing.

batch type. A code that designates which JDE system the associated transactions pertain to, thus controlling what records are selected for processing. For example, in the Post General Journal process, only unposted transaction batches with a batch type of G for General Accounting are selected for posting.

bill of material (BOM). A listing of all the subassemblies, parts, and raw materials that go into a parent assembly showing the quantity of each required to make the assembly. It is used in conjunction with the master production schedule to determine the items for which purchase requisitions and production orders must be released. There is a variety of display formats for bills of material, including: single level, multi level, indented, planning, and costing. Synonymous with formula, recipe, and ingredients list.

Boolean logic operand. In JDE's DREAM Writer, the parameter of the Relationship field. The Boolean logic operand tells the system to perform a comparison between certain records or parameters. Available operands are:

EQ = Equal To

LT = Less Than
LE = Less Than or Equal To
GT = Greater Than
GE = Greater Than or Equal To
NE = Not Equal To
NL = Not Less Than
NG = Not Greater Than

bubble chart. A diagram that attempts to display the interrelationships of systems, functions, or data in sequential flow. It derives its name from the circular symbols used to enclose the statements on the chart.

bucketed system. An MRP, DRP, or other time-phased system in which all time-phased data are accumulated into time periods or "buckets." If the period of accumulation is one week, then the system is said to have weekly buckets.

bucketless system. An MRP, DRP, or other time-phased system in which all time-phased data are processed, stored, and usually displayed using dated records rather than defined time periods or "buckets."

bulk issue. Parts issued from stores to work-in-process inventory, but not based on a job order. They are issued in quantities estimated to cover requirements of individual work centers and production lines. The issue may be used to cover a period of time or to fill a fixed-size container.

by-product. A material of value produced as residual of or incidental to the production process. The ratio of by-product to primary product is usually predictable. By-products may be recycled, sold as is, or used for other purposes.

CAD/CAP. Computer Assisted Design/Computer Assisted Programming. A set of automated programming tools for designing and developing systems. These tools automate system design, generate source code and documentation, enforce design standards, and help to ensure consistency throughout all JDE systems.
capacity requirements planning (CRP). The function of establishing, measuring, and adjusting limits or levels of capacity. It is the process of determining in detail how much labor and machine resources are required to accomplish the tasks of production. Open shop orders and planned orders in the MRP system are input to CRP, which "translates" these orders into hours of work by work center and by time period.

category code. In user defined codes, a temporary title for an undefined category. For example, if you are adding a code that designates different sales regions, you could change category code 4 to Sales Region, and define E (East), W (West), N (North), and S (South) as the valid codes. Category codes were formerly known as reporting codes.

classifier. Any letter, number, or other symbol that a computer can read, write, and store.

closed-loop MRP. A system built around material planning that includes the additional planning functions of sales and operations (production planning, master production scheduling, and capacity requirements planning). Once this planning phase is complete and the plans have been accepted as realistic and attainable, the execution functions come into play. These include the manufacturing control functions of input-output (capacity) measurement, detailed scheduling and dispatching, as well as anticipated delay reports from both the plant and supplier. The term "closed loop" implies that not only is each of these elements included in the overall system, but also that feedback is provided by the execution functions so that the planning can be kept valid at all times.

command. A character, word, phrase, or combination of keys you use to tell the computer to perform a defined activity.

component. Raw material, ingredient, part, or subassembly that goes into a higher level assembly, compound, or other item. This term may also include packaging materials for finished items.

component availability. The availability of component inventory for the manufacture of a specific parent order or group of orders or schedules.

constants. Parameters or codes that rarely change. The computer uses constants to standardize information processing by an associated system. Some examples of constants are allowing or disallowing out-of-balance postings and having the system perform currency conversions on all amounts. Once you set constants such as these, the system follows these rules until you change the constants.


costed bill of material. A form of bill of material that extends the quantity per of every component in the bill by the cost of the components.

crew size. The number of people required to perform an operation. The associated standard time should represent the total time for all crew members to perform the operation, not the net start to finish time for the crew.

cumulative leadtime. The longest planned length of time involved to accomplish the activity in question. For any item planned through MRP, it is found by reviewing the leadtime for each bill of material path below the item. Whichever path adds up to the greatest number defines cumulative leadtime. Synonymous with aggregate leadtime, composite leadtime, and critical path leadtime.
cumulative manufacturing leadtime. The cumulative planned leadtime when all purchased items are assumed to be in stock.

cumulative MRP. The planning of parts and subassemblies by exploding a master schedule, as in MRP, except that the master scheduled items and therefore the exploded requirements are time phased in cumulative form. Usually these cumulative figures cover a planning year.

current cost. The current or replacement cost of labor, material, or overhead. Its computation is based on current performance or measurements, and it is used to address "today's" costs before production as a revision of annual standard costs.

cursor. The blinking underscore or rectangle on your screen that indicates where the next keystroke will appear.

cursor sensitive help. JDE's online help function, which allows you to view a description of a field, an explanation of its purpose, and, when applicable, a list of the valid codes you can enter. To access this information, move the cursor to the field and press F1.

data. Numbers, letters, or symbols that represent facts, definitions, conditions, and situations, that a computer can read, write, and store.

database. A continuously updated collection of all information a system uses and stores. Databases make it possible to create, store, index, and cross-reference information online.

data dictionary. A database file consisting of the definitions, structures, and guidelines for the usage of fields, messages, and help text. The data dictionary file does not contain the actual data itself.

default. A code, number, or parameter the system supplies when you do not enter one. For example, if an input field’s default is N and the you do not enter something in that field, the system supplies an N.

demand. A need for a particular product or component. The demand could come from any number of sources, such as a customer order or forecast, or an interplant requirement or a request from a branch warehouse for a service part or for manufacturing another product.

dependent demand. Demand that is directly related to or derived from the bill of material structure for other items or end products. Such demands are calculated and need not and should not be forecast. A given inventory item may have both dependent and independent demand at any given time. For example, a part may simultaneously be the component of an assembly and also sold as a service part.

descriptive title. See user defined code.

detail. The individual pieces of information and data that make up a record or transaction. Contrast with summary.


direct labor. Labor that is specifically applied to the product being manufactured or utilized in the performance of the service.

direct material. Material that becomes a part of the final product in measurable quantities.

discrete manufacturing. Production of distinct items such as automobiles, appliances, or computers.

display. (1) To cause the computer to show information on a terminal’s screen. (2) A specific set of fields and information that a JDE system might show on a screen. Some screens can show more than one display when you press a specified function key.

display field. A field of information on a screen that contains a system-provided code or parameter that you cannot change. Contrast with input field.
downstream operation. A task subquent to the task currently being planned or executed.

DREAM Writer. Data Record Extraction And Management Writer. A flexible data manipulator and cataloging tool. You use this tool to select and sequence the data that is to appear on a programmed report.
edit. (1) To make changes to a file by adding, changing, or removing information. (2) The program function of highlighting fields into which you have entered inadequate or incorrect data.

effectivity date. The date on which a component or an operation is to be added or removed from a bill of material or an assembly process. The effective dates are used in the explosion process to create demands for the correct items. Normally, bill of material and routing systems provide for an effectivity "start date" (from) and "stop date" (thru), signifying the beginning and end of a particular relationship. Synonymous with effective date.

efficiency. A measure (as a percentage) of the actual output to the standard output expected. Efficiency measures how well something is performing relative to expectations; it does not measure output relative to any input. For example, if there is a standard of 100 pieces per hour and 780 units are produced in one eight-hour shift, the efficiency is 780 divided by 800, then multiplied by 100% or 97.5%.

electronic data interchange (EDI). The paperless (electronic) exchange of trading documents, such as purchase orders, shipment authorizations, advanced shipment notices, and invoices, using standardized document formats.

end item. A product sold as a completed item or repair part. Any item subject to a customer order or sales forecast. Synonymous with end product, finished good, and finished product.

engineering change order (ECO). A work order used to implement a change in a manufactured product. This can be a change in design, quantity or parts required, assembly or production process, and so forth.

engineer-to-order. Products whose customer specifications require unique engineering design or significant customization. Each customer order results in a unique set of part numbers, bills of material, and routings.

execute. See run.

exit. (1) To interrupt or leave a computer program by pressing a specific key or a sequence of keys. (2) An option or function key displayed on a screen that allows you to access another screen.

expedite. To "rush" or "chase" production or purchase orders that are needed in less than the normal leadtime. To take extraordinary action because of an increase in relative priority.

facility. A collection of computer language statements or programs that provides a specialized function throughout a system or throughout all integrated systems. Some examples DREAM Writer and FASTR.


feature. An accessory or attachment to an item.

field. (1) An area on a screen that represents a particular type of information, such as name, document type, or amount. Fields that you can enter data into are designated with underscores. See input field and display field. (2) A defined area within a record that contains a specific piece of information. For example, a vendor record
consists of the fields Vendor Name, Address, and Telephone Number. The Vendor Name field contains just the name of the vendor.

**file.** A collection of related data records organized for a specific use and electronically stored by the computer.

**fixed cost.** An expenditure that does not vary with the production volume, for example, rent, property tax, and salaries of certain personnel.

**fixed order quantity.** A lot-sizing technique in MRP or inventory management that will always cause planned or actual orders to be generated for a predetermined fixed quantity, or multiples thereof, if net requirements for the period exceed the fixed order quantity.

**fixed overhead.** Traditionally all manufacturing costs, other than direct labor and direct materials, that continue even if products are not produced. Although fixed overhead is necessary to produce the product, it cannot be directly traced to the final product.

**fold area.** An area of a screen, accessed by pressing F4, that displays additional information associated with the records or data items displayed on the screen.

**forecast.** An estimate of future demand. A forecast can be determined by mathematical means using historical data, created subjectively by using estimates from informal sources, or a combination of both techniques.

**function.** A separate feature within a facility that allows you to perform a specific task, for example, the field help function.

**function key.** A key you press to perform a system operation or action. For example, you press F4 to have the system display the fold area of a screen.

**Gantt chart.** A control chart designed to show graphically the relationship between planned performance and actual performance.

**hard copy.** A presentation of computer information printed on paper. Synonymous with printout.

**header.** Information at the beginning of a file. This information is used to identify or provide control information for the group of records that follows.

**help instructions.** Online documentation or explanations of fields that you access by pressing the Help key or by pressing F1 with your cursor in a particular field.

**helps.** See help instructions.

**hidden selections.** Menu selections you cannot see until you enter HS in a menu's Selection field. Although you cannot see these selections, they are available from any menu. They include such items as Display Submitted Jobs (33), Display User Job Queue (42), and Display User Print Queue (43). The Hidden Selections window displays three categories of selections: user tools, operator tools, and programmer tools.

**implode.** 1) Compression of detailed data in a summary-level record or report. 2) Tracing a usage and/or cost impact from the bottom to the top (end product) of a bill of material using where-used logic.

**implosion.** The process of determining the where-used relationship for a given component. Implosion can be single-level (showing only the parents on the next higher level) or multilevel (showing the ultimate top-level parent). Synonymous with where used. Contrast with explosion.

**indented bill of material.** A form of multilevel bill of material that lists the highest level parent items at the left margin and all the components going into these parents indented to the right of the margin. All subsequent levels of components are indented farther to the right. If a component is used in more than one parent within a given product structure, it will appear more than once, under every subassembly in which it is used.
**indented where-used.** A listing of every parent item, and the respective quantities required, as well as each of their respective parent items, continuing until the ultimate end item, or level-0 item, is listed. Each of these parent items is one that calls for a given component item in a bill of material file. The component item is shown closest to the left margin of the listing, with each parent indented to the right, and each of their respective parents indented even further to the right.

**indirect costs.** Costs that are not directly incurred by a particular job or operation. Certain utility costs, such as plant heating, are often indirect. An indirect cost is typically distributed to the product through the overhead rates.

**indirect labor.** Work required to support production in general without being related to a specific product, for example, sweeping the floor.

**indirect materials.** Items that become part of the final product or substances that are consumed in the manufacture of a product that have a negligible value relative to the value of the final product or the usage of which cannot be effectively determined. These components may or may not be included in the bill of material. Synonymous with *supplies.*

**input.** Information you enter in the input fields on a screen or that the computer enters from other programs, then edits and stores in files.

**input field.** An area on a screen, distinguished by underscores (_ __), where you type data, values, or characters. A field represents a specific type of information such as name, document type, or amount. Contrast with *display field.*

**install system code.** The code that identifies a JDE system. Examples are 01 for the Address Book system, 04 for the Accounts Payable system, and 09 for the General Accounting system.

**interactive processing.** A job the computer performs in response to commands you enter from a terminal. During interactive processing, you are in direct communication with the computer, and it might prompt you for additional information during the processing of your request. See *online.* Contrast with *batch processing.*

**interface.** A link between two or more JDE systems that allows these systems to send information to and receive information from one another.

**issue.** The physical movement of items from a stocking location and, often, the transaction reporting of this activity.

**issue cycle.** The time required to generate a requisition for material, pull the material from an inventory location, and move it to its destination.

**item.** Any unique manufactured or purchased part, material, intermediate, subassembly, or product.

**item master record.** The master record for an item. Typically, it contains identifying and descriptive data and control values (leadtimes, lot sizes, etc.) and may contain data on inventory status, requirements, planned orders, and costs. Item records are linked together by product structure records which define the bill of material for an item.

**item number.** A number that serves to uniquely identify an item. Synonymous with *part number.*

**jargon.** A JDE term for system specific help text. You base your help text on a specific reporting code you designate in the Data Dictionary Glossary. You can display this text as part of online help.

**job.** A single identifiable set of processing actions you tell the computer to perform. You start jobs by choosing menu selections, entering commands, or pressing designated function keys. An example of a computer job is check printing in the Accounts Payable system.
job queue. A screen that lists the batch jobs you and others have told the computer to process. When the computer completes a job, the system removes the job’s identifier from the list.

justify. To shift information you enter in an input field to the right or left side of the field. Many of the facilities within JDE systems justify information. The system does this only after you press Enter.

Just-in-Time (JIT). A philosophy of manufacturing based on planned elimination of all waste and continuous improvement of productivity. The primary elements of zero inventories are to have only the required inventory when needed; to improve quality to zero defects; to reduce leadtimes by reducing setup times, queue lengths, and lot sizes; to incrementally revise the operations themselves; and to accomplish these things at minimum cost.

key field. A field common to each record in a file. The system uses the key field designated by the program to organize and retrieve information from the file.

Key General Ledger Account (Key G/L). See automatic accounting instructions.

labor cost. The dollar amount of added value due to labor performed during manufacturing.

leading zeros. A series of zeros that certain facilities in JDE systems place in front of a value you enter. This normally occurs when you enter a value that is smaller than the specified length of the field. For example, if you enter 4567 in a field that accommodates eight numbers, the facility places four zeros in front of the four numbers you enter. The result would look like this: 00004567.

leadtime. 1) A span of time required to perform a process (or series of operations). 2) In a logistics context, the time between recognition of the need for an order and the receipt of goods. Individual components of leadtime can include order preparation time, queue time, move or transportation time, and receiving and inspection time.

leadtime offset. A technique used in MRP where a planned order receipt in one time period will require the release of that order in an earlier time period based on the leadtime for the item.

level. Every part or assembly in a product structure is assigned a level code signifying the relative level in which that part or assembly is used within the product structure. Normally the end items are assigned to level 0 with the components and subassemblies going into it assigned to level 1 and so forth. The MRP explosion process starts from level 0 and proceeds downward one level at a time.

level of detail. (1) The degree of difficulty of a menu in JDE software. The levels of detail for menus are as follows: A=Major Product Directories B=Product Groups 1=Basic Operations 2=Intermediate Operations 3=Advanced Operations 4=Computer Operations 5=Programmers 6=Advanced Programmers Also known as menu levels. (2) The degree to which account information in the General Accounting system is summarized. The highest level of detail is 1 (least detailed) and the lowest level of detail is 9 (most detailed).

master file. A computer file that a system uses to store data and information which is permanent and necessary to the system’s operation. Master files might contain data or information such as paid tax amounts and vendor names and addresses.

load. The amount of planned work scheduled and actual work released for a facility, work center, or operation for a
specific span of time. It is usually expressed in terms of standard hours of work or, when items consume similar resources at the same rate, units of production.

**lot.** A quantity produced together and sharing the same production costs and resultant specifications.

**lot number.** A number that identifies a designated group of related items manufactured in a single run or received from a vendor in a single shipment.

**lot number control.** Assignment of unique numbers to each instance of receipt and carrying forth that number into subsequent manufacturing processes so that, in review of an end item, each lot consumed from raw materials through end item can be identified as having been used for the manufacture of this specific end item lot.

**lot number traceability.** Tracking parts by lot numbers to a group of items. This tracking can assist in the tracing of quality problems to their source.

**lot traceability.** The ability to identify the lot or batch numbers of consumption and/or composition for manufactured, purchased, and shipped items. This is a federal requirement in certain regulated industries.

**low-level code.** A number that identifies the lowest level in any bill of material at which a particular component may appear. Net requirements for a given component are not calculated until all the gross requirements have been calculated down to that level. Low-level codes are normally calculated and maintained automatically by the computer software. Synonymous with explosion level.

**machine hours.** The amount of time, in hours, that a machine is actually running. Machine hours, rather than labor hours, may be used for planning capacity and scheduling and for allocating costs.

**make-to-order product.** A product that is finished after receipt of a customer’s order. The final product is usually a combination of standard items and items custom designed to meet the special needs of the customer. Frequently long leadtime components are planned prior to the order arriving in order to reduce the delivery time to the customer. Where options or other subassemblies are stocked prior to customer orders arriving, the term "assemble-to-order" is frequently used.

**make-to-stock product.** A product that is shipped from finished goods, "off-the-shelf," and therefore is finished prior to a customer order arriving. The master scheduling and final assembly scheduling are conducted at the finished goods level.

**manufacturing leadtime.** The total time required to manufacture an item, exclusive of lower level purchasing leadtime. It includes the time for order preparation, queue, setup, run, move, inspection, and put-away.

**manufacturing resource planning (MRP II).** A method for the effective planning of all resources of a manufacturing company. Ideally, it addresses operational planning in units, financial planning in dollars, and has a simulation capability to answer “what if” questions. It is made up of a variety of functions, each linked together: business planning, sales and operations (production planning), master production scheduling, material requirements planning, capacity requirements planning, and the execution support systems for capacity and material. Output from these systems is integrated with financial reports such as the business plan, purchase commitment report, shipping budget, inventory projections in dollars, etc. Manufacturing resource planning is a direct outgrowth and extension of closed-loop MRP.

**master file.** A computer file that a system uses to store data and information which is permanent and necessary to the system’s
operation. Master files might contain data or information such as paid tax amounts and vendor names and addresses.

**master planning.** A classification scheme that includes the following activities: forecasting and order servicing (which together constitute demand management); production and resource planning; and master scheduling (which includes the final assembly schedule, the master schedule, and the rough cut capacity plan).

**master production schedule (MPS).** A detailed statement of how many items are planned to be produced and when. The MPS focuses on products to be made and, through the detailed planning system, identifies the resources (materials, workforce, plant equipment and capital) needed and the timing of the need.

**menu.** A screen that displays numbered selections. Each of these selections represents a program. To access a selection from a menu, type the selection number and then press Enter.

**menu levels.** See *level of detail.*

**menu masking.** A security feature of JDE systems that lets you prevent individual users from accessing specified menus or menu selections. The system does not display the menus or menu selections to unauthorized users.

**menu message.** Text that appears on a screen after you make a menu selection. It displays a warning, caution, or information about the requested selection.

**need date.** The date when an item is required for its intended use. In an MRP system, this date is calculated by a bill of material explosion of a schedule and the netting of available inventory against that requirement.

**next number facility.** A JDE software facility you use to control the automatic numbering of such items as new G/L accounts, vouchers, and addresses. It lets you specify your desired numbering system and provides a method to increment numbers to reduce transposition and typing errors.

**nonsignificant part numbers.** Part numbers that are assigned to each part but do not convey any information about the part. They are identifiers, not descriptors. Contrast with *significant part numbers.*

**numeric character.** Represents data using the numbers 0 through 9. Contrast with *alphabetic character* and *alphanumeric character.*

**offline.** Computer functions that are not under the continuous control of the system. For example, if you were to run a certain job on a personal computer and then transfer the results to a host computer, that job would be considered an offline function. Contrast with *online.*

**online.** Computer functions over which the system has continuous control. Each time you work with a JDE system-provided screen, you are online with the system. Contrast with *offline.* See *interactive processing.*

**online information.** Information the system retrieves, usually at your request, and immediately displays on the screen. This information includes items such as database information, documentation, and messages.

**operand.** See *Boolean logic operand.*

**operation number.** A sequential number, usually two, three, or four digits long, such as 010, 020, 030, and so forth, that indicates the sequence in which operations are to be performed within an item’s routing.

**operations sequence.** The sequential steps for an item to follow in its flow through the plant. For instance, operation 1: cut bar stock; operation 2: grind bar stock; operation 3: shape; operation 4: polish; operation 5: inspect and send to stock. This information is normally maintained in the routing file.
option. A numbered selection from a JDE screen that performs a particular function or task. To select an option, you enter its number in the Option field next to the item you want the function performed on. When available, for example, option 4 allows you to return to a prior screen with a value from the current screen.

output. Information the computer transfers from internal storage to an external device, such as a printer or a computer screen.

output queue. A screen that lists the spooled files (reports) you have told the computer to write to an output device, such as a printer. After the computer writes a file, the system removes that file's identifier from the online list.

overhead. Costs incurred in the operation of a business that cannot be directly related to the individual products or services produced. These costs, such as light, heat, supervision, and maintenance, are grouped in several pools (department overhead, factory overhead, general overhead) and distributed to units of product or service by some standard allocation method.

overlap. The percentage that an operation overlaps the previous operation in the sequence. For example, a 20% overlap means that the step can begin when the previous step is 80% complete.

override. The process of entering a code or parameter other than the one provided by the system. Many JDE systems offer screens that provide default field values when they appear. By typing a new value over the default code, you can override the default. See default.

parameter. A number, code, or character string you specify in association with a command or program. The computer uses parameters as additional input or to control the actions of the command or program.

part. Generally, a material item that is used as a component and is not an assembly, subassembly blend, intermediate, and so forth.

password. A unique group of characters that you enter when you sign on to the system that the computer uses to identify you as a valid user.

pegging. In MRP, the capability to identify for a given item the sources of its gross requirements and/or allocations. Pegging can be thought of as "live where-used" information.

picking. The process of withdrawing from stock the components to make the products or the finished goods to be shipped to a customer.

pick list. A document that lists the material to be picked for manufacturing or shipping orders.

planned order. A suggested order quantity, release date, and due date created by MRP processing when it encounters net requirements. Planned orders are created by the computer, exist only within the computer, and may be changed or deleted by the computer during subsequent MRP processing if conditions change. Planned orders at one level will be exploded into gross requirements for components at the next lower level. Planned orders, along with released orders, serve as input to capacity requirements planning to show the total capacity requirements by work center in future time periods.

planning bill of material. An artificial grouping of items and/or events in bill of material format, used to facilitate master scheduling and/or material planning. Sometimes called a pseudo bill of material.

planning family. A group of end items whose similarity of design and manufacture facilitates being planned in aggregate.

planning horizon. The amount of time the master schedule extends into the future. This is normally set to cover a minimum of
cumulative leadtime plus time for lot sizing low-level components and for capacity changes of primary work centers.

**primary location.** The designation of a certain storage location as the standard, preferred location for an item.

**printout.** A presentation of computer information printed on paper. Synonymous with *hard copy*.

**print queue.** An online list (screen) of written files that you have told the computer to print. Once the computer prints the file, the system removes the file's identifier from the online list. See *output queue*.

**priority.** The relative importance of jobs. The sequence in which jobs should be worked on.

**process manufacturing.** Production that adds value by mixing, separating, forming, and/or performing chemical reactions. It may be done in either batch or continuous mode.

**processing options.** A feature of the JDE DREAM Writer that allows you to supply parameters to direct the functions of a program. For example, processing options allow you to specify defaults for certain screen displays, control the format in which information gets printed on reports, change the way a screen displays information, and enter "as of" dates.

**program.** A collection of computer statements that tells the computer to perform a specific task or group of tasks.

**program specific help text.** Glossary text that describes the function of a field within the context of the program.

**prompt.** (1) A reminder or request for information displayed by the system. When a prompt appears, you must respond in order to proceed. (2) A list of codes or parameters or a request for information provided by the system as a reminder of the type of information you should enter or action you should take.

**PTF.** Program Temporary Fix. A representation of changes to JDE software, which your organization receives on magnetic tapes or diskettes.

**purchased part.** An item sourced from a supplier.

**purge.** The process of removing records or data from a system file.

**record.** A collection of related, consecutive fields of data the system treats as a single unit of information. For example, a vendor record consists of information such as the vendor's name, address, and telephone number.

**reporting code.** See *category code*.

**reverse image.** Screen text that displays in the opposite color combination of characters and background from what the screen typically displays (for example, black on green instead of green on black).

**quantity per.** The quantity of a component to be used in the production of its parent. This value is stored in the bill of material and is used to calculate the gross requirements for components during the explosion process of MRP.

**queue.** 1) In computers: See job queue, output queue, and print queue.
2) In manufacturing: A waiting line. The jobs at a given work center waiting to be processed. As queues increase, so do average queue time and work-in-process inventory.

**rated capacity.** The demonstrated capability of a system. Traditionally, capacity is calculated from such data as planned hours, efficiency, and utilization. The rated capacity is equal to hours available x efficiency x utilization.

**rate-based scheduling.** A method for scheduling and producing based on a periodic rate, for example, daily, weekly or monthly. Traditionally, this method has been applied to high-volume and process industries. The concept can be applied within job shops using cellular layouts and
mixed-model level schedules where the production rate is matched to the selling rate.

**raw material.** Purchased items or extracted materials that are converted via the manufacturing process into components and/or products. 1) The physical acceptance of an item into a stocking location. 2) The transaction reporting of this activity.

**record.** A collection of related, consecutive fields of data the system treats as a single unit of information. For example, a vendor record consists of information such as the vendor's name, address, and telephone number.

**release.** The authorization to produce or ship material that has already been ordered.

**repetitive manufacturing.** A form of manufacturing where various items with similar routings are made across the same process whenever production occurs. Products may be made in separate batches or continuously. Production in a repetitive environment is not a function of speed or volume.

**replacement parts.** Parts that can be used as substitutes that differ from completely interchangeable service parts in that they require some physical modification, such as cutting, drilling, and so forth, before they can replace the original part.

**revision level.** A number or letter representing the number of times a document has been changed.

**rework order.** A manufacturing order to rework and salvage defective parts or products.

**resource requirements planning (RRP).** The process of converting the production plan and/or the master production schedule into capacity needs for key resources: work force, machinery, warehouse space, suppliers' capabilities, and in some cases, money. Comparison of capacity required of items in the MPS to available capacity is usually done for each key resource. Synonymous with *rough cut capacity planning.*

**routing.** A set of information detailing the method of manufacture of a particular item. It includes the operations to be performed, their sequence, the various work centers to be involved, and the standards for setup and run. In some companies, the routing also includes information on tooling, operator skill levels, inspection operations, testing requirements, and so forth.

**run.** To cause the computer to perform a routine, process a batch of transactions, or carry out computer program instructions.

**run size.** See standard batch quantity.

**safety stock.** 1) In general, a quantity of stock planned to be in inventory to protect against fluctuations in demand and/or supply. 2) In the context of master production scheduling, the additional inventory and/or capacity planned as protection against forecast errors and/or short-term changes in the backlog. Overplanning can be used to create safety stock.

**scrap.** Unusable material that results from the production process. It is material outside of specifications and of such characteristics that rework is impractical.

**scrap factor.** A percentage factor in the product structure used to increase gross requirements to account for anticipated loss within the manufacture of a particular product. Synonymous with *scrap rate.*

**scroll.** To use the roll keys to move screen information up or down a screen at a time. When you press the Rollup key, for instance, the system replaces the currently displayed text with the next screen of text if more text is available.
selection. Found on JDE menus, selections represent functions that you can access from a given menu. To make a selection, you type its associated number in the Selection field and press Enter.

setup. 1) The work required to change a specific machine, resource, work center, or line from making the last good piece of unit A to the first good piece of unit B; 2) Teardown of the just completed production and preparation of the equipment for production of the next scheduled item.

setup cost. The costs such as scrap costs, calibration costs, downtime costs, and lost sales associated with preparing the resource for the next product.

setup leadtime. The time needed to prepare a manufacturing process to start. Setup leadtime may include run and inspection time for the first piece.

shelf life. The amount of time an item may be held in inventory before it becomes unusable.

shop calendar. See work day calendar.

shop floor control (SFC). A system for utilizing data from the shop floor to maintain and communicate status information on shop orders (manufacturing orders) and on work centers. The major subfunctions of shop floor control are: 1) assigning priority of each shop order; 2) maintaining work-in-process quantity information, 3) conveying shop order status information to the office, 4) providing actual output data for capacity control purposes, 5) providing quantity by location by shop order for work-in-process inventory and accounting purposes, and 6) providing measurement of efficiency, utilization, and productivity of the work force and machines.

shrinkage. Reductions of actual quantities of items in stock, in process, or in transit. The loss may be caused by scrap, theft, deterioration, evaporation, and so forth.

shrinkage factor. A percentage factor in the item master record that compensates for expected loss during the manufacturing cycle either by increasing the gross requirements or by reducing the expected completion quantity of planned and open orders. The shrinkage factor differs from the scrap factor in that the former affects all uses of the part and its components and the scrap factor relates to only one usage. Synonymous with shrinkage rate.

significant part numbers. Part numbers that are intended to convey certain information, such as the source of the part, the material in the part, the shape of the part, and so forth. These usually make part numbers longer. Contrast with nonsignificant part numbers.

simulation. 1) The technique of using representative or artificial data to reproduce in a model various conditions that are likely to occur in the actual performance of a system. It is frequently used to test the behavior of a system under different operating policies. 2) Within MRP II, using the operational data to perform "what if" evaluations of alternative plans to answer the question, "Can we do it?" If yes, the simulation can then be run in the financial mode to help answer the question, "Do we really want to?" Synonymous with what-if analysis.

single level bill of material. A display of those components that are directly used in a parent item. It shows only the relationships one level down.

single-level where-used. A list of each parent in which a specific component is directly used and in what quantity. Done by imploding the bill of material.

softcoding. A JDE term that describes an entire family of features that allows you to customize and adapt JDE software to your business environment. These features lessen
the need for you to use computer
programmers when your data processing
needs change.

**software.** The operating system and
application programs that tell the computer
how and what tasks to perform.

**special character.** Representation of data
in symbols that are neither letters nor
numbers. Some examples are * & # /.

**spool.** The function by which the system
puts generated output into a storage area to
await printing and processing.

**spooled file.** A holding file for output
data waiting to be printed or input data
waiting to be processed.

**standard batch quantity.** The quantity of
a parent that is used as the basis for
specifying the material requirements for
production. The "quantity per" is expressed
as the quantity to make the standard batch
quantity, not to make only one of the
parent. It is often used by manufacturers
that use some components in very small
quantities or by process-related
manufacturers. Synonymous with run size.

**standard costs.** The target costs of an
operation, process, or product including
direct material, direct labor, and overhead
charges.

**standard cost system.** A cost system that
uses cost units determined before
production. For management control
purposes, the standards are compared to
actual costs and variances are computed.

**standard hours.** The length of time that
should be required to 1) set up a given
machine or operation and 2) run one
part/assembly/batch/end product through
that operation. This time is used in
determining machine and labor
requirements. It is also frequently used as a
basis for incentive pay systems and as a
basis of allocating overhead in cost
accounting systems.

**subassembly.** An assembly that is used at
a higher level to make up another
assembly.

**subfile.** An area on the screen where the
system displays detailed information related
to the header information at the top of the
screen. Subfiles might contain more
information than the screen can display in
the subfile area. If so, use the roll keys to
display the next screen of information. See
scroll.

**submit.** See run.

**summary.** The presentation of data or
information in a cumulative or totaled
manner in which most of the details have
been removed. Many of the JDE systems
offer screens and reports that are summaries
of the information stored in certain files.

**superflush.** A technique to relieve all
components down to the lowest level using
the complete bill of material, based on the
count of finished units produced and/or
transferred to finished good inventory.

**system.** A collection of computer
programs that allows you to perform
specific business tasks. Some examples of
applications are Accounts Payable,
Inventory, and Order Processing.
Synonymous with application.

**throughput.** 1) The total volume of
production through a facility (machine,
work center, department, plant, or network
of plants). 2) In theory of constraints, the
rate at which the system (firm) generates
money through sales.

**time series.** A set of data that is
distributed over time, such as demand data
in monthly time period occurrences.

**unit cost.** Total labor, material, and
overhead cost for one unit of production,
for example, one part, one gallon, or one
pound.

**unit of measure.** The unit in which the
quantity of an item is managed, such as by
weight, each, box, package, case, and so
forth.
**use as is.** A classification for material that has been dispositioned as unacceptable per the specification, yet can be used.

**user defined code.** The individual codes you create and define within a user defined code type. Code types are used by programs to edit data and allow only defined codes. These codes might consist of a single character or a set of characters that represents a word, phrase, or definition. These characters can be alphabetic, alphanumerical, or numeric. For example, in the user defined code type table ST (Search Type), a few codes are C for Customers, E for Employees, and V for Vendors.

**user defined code (type).** The identifier for a table of codes with a meaning you define for the system (for example, ST for the Search Type codes table in Address Book). JDE systems provide a number of these tables and allow you to create and define tables of your own. User defined codes were formerly known as descriptive titles.

**user identification (user ID).** The unique name you enter when you sign on to a JDE system to identify yourself to the system. This ID can be up to 10 characters long and can consist of alphabetic, alphanumerical, and numeric characters.

**valid codes.** The allowed codes, amounts, or types of data that you can enter in a specific input field. The system checks, or edits, user defined code fields for accuracy against the list of valid codes.

**variable.** Changing, not constant or fixed. For example, variable costs are costs that change according to varying conditions.

**variable overhead.** All manufacturing costs that vary directly with production volume, other than direct labor and direct materials. Variable overhead is necessary to produce the product, but cannot be directly assigned to a specific product.

**variance.** The difference between the expected (budgeted or planned) value and the actual value.

**video.** The display of information on your monitor screen. Normally referred to as the screen.

**vocabulary overrides.** A JDE facility that allows you to override field, row, or column title text on a screen-by-screen or report-by-report basis.

**where used list.** A listing of every parent item that calls for a given component, and the respective quantity required, from a bill of material file. Synonymous with implosion.

**window.** A software feature that allows a part of your screen to function as if it were a screen in itself. Windows serve a dedicated purpose within a facility, such as searching for a specific valid code for a field.

**work center.** A specific production facility, consisting of one or more people and/or machines with identical capabilities, that can be considered as one unit for purposes of capacity requirements planning and detailed scheduling. Synonymous with load center.

**work day calendar.** A calendar used in inventory and production planning functions that consecutively numbers only the working days so that the component and work order scheduling may be done based on the actual number of work days available. Synonymous with planning calendar, manufacturing calendar, and shop calendar.

**work in process (WIP).** A product or products in various stages of completion throughout the plant, including all material from raw material that has been released for initial processing up to completely processed material awaiting final inspection and acceptance as finished product. Many accounting systems also include the value.
of semi-finished stock and components in this category. Synonymous with *in-process inventory*. 
Index
Index

A

A7.3, Engineering Change Orders
linking a work order to an ECO, 3–34
locating ECO information, 3–56
order–specific approval routings, 3–20
revision levels, overview, 3–7
updating component revision levels, 3–41
updating drawing revision levels, 3–41
updating revision levels, 3–75
Alternate operations, defined, work centers, 2–6
Approval audit, ECOs, 3–56
Approval routing master, 3–20
Approving ECOs, 3–71
Arrangement, work centers, 2–4

B

Batch processes, overview, 2–7
Bill of Material Population, processing options, 3–77
Bills of Material, types, 2–15
Bills of material
changing in groups, 2–54
updating, 3–75
Branch/Plant information
assigning an item to a branch plant, 1–52
entering branch/Plant information, 1–49
entering item manufacturing information, 1–57
form, 1–51
item locations
deleting primary locations, 1–56
effects on quantities, 1–56
item manufacturing information
engineering, 1–60
leadtime, 1–59
overview, 1–49
working with item locations, 1–52
By–Product, defined, work centers, 2–6

C

Case study, training class, 2–9
Change with a parts list, defining, 3–37
Changing, multiple processes, 2–54
Changing multiple processes, 2–54
Checking low level codes, 2–57
Co By Product Where Produced, processing options, 2–66
Co-/By–products, entering, 2–49
Co–Product, defined, work centers, 2–5
Component scrap, updating, 2–53
Costing and accounting information, entering, work centers, 2–31
Cumulative, leadtimes, C–4

D

Defining, change with a parts list, 3–37
Defining the change with a parts list, 3–37
Defining the routing, 3–35
Descrete manufacturing
setting up, 2–11
setting up manufacturing constants, 2–12

E

ECO
changes, 3–6
definition, 3–2
engineering change tables, 3–8
existing disposition codes defined, 3–9
features, 3–2
phase in codes defined, 3–9
priority codes defined, 3–9
process, 3–3
reason codes defined, 3–10
setting up, 3–9
setting up codes, 3–9
status codes defined, 3–9
type codes defined, 3–9

Product Data Management Process Manufacturing

ECO – Assignment Review Inquiry, processing options, 3–61, 3–66, 3–70
ECO Approval, processing options, 3–74
ECO Approval/Audit Review, processing options, 3–59, 3–65, 3–69
ECO Entry, processing options, 3–52
ECO Order Approval Notification, processing options, 3–53
ECO Parts List, processing options, 3–47
ECO reviewers
assigning to groups, 3–23
setting up, 3–20
ECO Workbench, processing options, 3–29
ECOs
approval audit, 3–56
approving, 3–71
entering, 3–30
open tasks, 3–56
printing details, 3–62
printing open, 3–63
reviewing, 3–55
verifying existing, 3–25
Engineering Change Management
objectives, 3–1
overview, 3–1
Engineering Change Population program, 3–75
Entering
co–/by–products, 2–49
ECOs, 3–30
ingredients, 2–44
intermediates, 2–50
operations, 2–40
production information, 2–48
Entering a work center, 2–26
Entering an ECO, 3–30
Entering co–/by–products, 2–49
Entering costing and accounting information, 2–31
Entering ingredients, 2–44
Entering intermediates, 2–50
Entering operations, 2–40
Entering production information, 2–48
ERPx, overview, 1–5

F

Fast path commands, 1–8
Features, 1–4
ECOs, 3–2
work centers, 2–2
Forms
Item Branch/Plant Information, 1–51
Item Master Information, 1–14
Manufacturing Values Entry, 1–38

G

Generating, work with leadtimes, 2–77
Generating leadtimes, 2–77

I

Ingredient defined, work centers, 2–6
Ingredient information, printing, 2–68
Ingredient Where Used, processing options, 2–72
Ingredients, entering, 2–44
Ingredients Inquiry, processing options, 2–62
Ingredients Where Used, processing options, 2–63
Integration
ECOs with other JDE systems, 3–3
with Inventory Management, 1–1
with MPS/ERP, 1–1
with Product Costing/Manufacturing Accounting, 1–1
with Shop Floor Control, 1–1
Integrity Analysis Report, 2–57
Intermediate, defined, work centers, 2–6
Intermediates, entering, 2–50
Item Branch Revisions, processing options, 1–61
Item Branch/Plant Information form, sample, 1–51
Item Branch/Plant Information program (P41026), 1–51
Item Master Information, entering item units of measure information, 1–32
Item Master information
assigning item responsibility, 1–25
deleting, 1–15
entering basic item information, 1–15
entering grade and potency information, 1–43
entering item classification codes, 1–27
entering item manufacturing information, 1–38
entering Item Master information, 1–13
entering item text, form, 1–22
form, 1–15
grade and potency information, for sales, 1–44
item text, form, 1–22
manufacturing information
form, 1–38
requirements planning, 1–38
overview, 1–13
setting up a template, 1–14
Item Master Information form, sample, 1–14
Item Master Information program (P4101), 1–14
Item Master Revisions, processing options, 1–47
Items. See setting up items

M

Maintaining
batch processes, 2–7
leadtime, 2–8
percent processes, 2–7
Make/Buy table, 2–21
Manufacturing, leadtimes, C–5
Manufacturing Values Entry form, sample, 1–38
Manufacturing Values Entry program (P41013), 1–38
Menu flow, 1–7
Multilevel Ingredient Report, processing options, 2–70
Multiple processes, changing, 2–54

N

Next numbers, 3–18
Notifying ECO reviewers, 3–53
Notifying, reviewers, 3–53

O

Open tasks, ECOs, 3–56
Operations, entering, 2–40
Overview
ERPx, 1–5
process manufacturing, 2–1
processes, 2–37
review processes, 2–59
work with ECOs, 3–25

P

Pending orders, 3–49
Per unit, leadtimes, C–4
Percent processes, overview, 2–7
Printing
ingredient information, 2–68
open ECOs, 3–63
Printing details, ECOs, 3–62
Printing ECO information, 3–61
Printing process information, 2–68
R

Reports, Integrity Analysis, 2–57
Review Processes, overview, 2–59
Reviewers, notifying, 3–53
Reviewing
  ECOs, 3–55
  working with leadtimes, 2–75
Reviewing ECOs, 3–55
Reviewing leadtimes, 2–75
Reviewing operations, by work centers, 2–34
Reviewing operations by work center, 2–34
Reviewing processes, 2–59
Revision levels, Overview for ECOs, 3–7
Routing, defining, 3–35
Routings, setting up types, 2–23

S

Setting up
  approval routing master, 3–20
  bills of material types, 2–15
  ECO reviewers, 3–20
  make/buy table, 2–21
  next numbers, 3–18
  routing types, 2–23
  shop floor calendar, 2–19
  standard procedure descriptions, 2–18
  time basis code, 2–16
Setting up an approval routing, 3–20
Setting up bill of material types, 2–15
Setting up codes, 3–9
Setting up discrete manufacturing, 2–11
Setting up engineering change order codes, 3–9
Setting up engineering change orders, 3–9
Setting up items, overview, 1–9
Setting up manufacturing constants, 2–11
Setting up next numbers for engineering change orders, 3–18
Setting up routing types, 2–23
Setting up standard procedure descriptions, 2–18
Setting up the make/buy table, 2–21
Setting up the shop floor calendar, 2–19
Setting up time basis codes, 2–16

Q

Queue/move hours, leadtimes, C–2

Process manufacturing overview, 2–1
Process routing, defined, work centers, 2–6
Processes
  verifying, 2–57
  work centers, 2–4
  working with, 2–37
Processing options
  Bill of Material Population, 3–77
  Co By Product Where Produced, 2–66
  ECO – Assignment Review Inquiry, 3–61, 3–66, 3–70
  ECO Approval, 3–74
  ECO Approval/Audit Review, 3–59, 3–65, 3–69
  ECO Entry, 3–52
  ECO Order Approval Notification, 3–53
  ECO Parts List, 3–47
  ECO Workbench, 3–29
  Ingredient Where Used, 2–72
  Ingredients Inquiry, 2–62
  Ingredients Where Used, 2–63
  Item Branch Revisions, 1–61
  Item Master Revisions, 1–47
  Leadtime Bill of Material Inquiry, 2–77
  Leadtime Calculation, 2–77
  Multilevel Ingredient Report, 2–70
  Single Level Ingredient Report, 2–69
  Where Used Update, 2–56
  Work With Routing Operations, 2–52
Production information, entering, 2–48
Programs and IDs
  P30510, 3–75
  P30520, 2–54
  P30601, 2–57
  P4101 (item master information), 1–14
  P41013 (manufacturing values entry), 1–38
  P41026 (item branch/plant information), 1–51
Purchase parts, leadtimes, C–5
Setup hours, leadtimes, C-2
Shop floor calendar, setting up, 2-19
Single Level Ingredient Report, processing options, 2-69
Standard procedure descriptions, setting up codes, 2-18
Substitute, defined, work centers, 2-6
System integration, work centers, 2-3

T

Tables, 2-8
Test yourself
  Enter/Change Work Center, 2-36
generating leadtimes, 2-78
Time basis codes, setting up, 2-16
Training class, case study, 2-9

U

Updating
  bills of material, 3-75
  component scrap, 2-53
Updating bills of material, 3-75
Updating component scrap, 2-53

V

Verifying, processes, 2-57
Verifying existing, 3-25
Verifying processes, 2-57

W

What is an ECO?, 3-2
Where Used Update, 2-54
  processing options, 2-56
Work centers
  alternate operations, defined, 2-6
  arrangement, 2-4
  by-product, defined, 2-6
  co-product, defined, 2-5
costing and accounting information, entering, 2-31